

DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 184 313

FL 010 989

TITLE Chinese-Mandarin: Basic Course. Volume II, Lessons 16-27.

INSTITUTION Defense Language Inst., Monterey, Calif.

PUB DATE Jun 64

NOTE 299p.; For related documents, see FL 010 988-992 and FL 011 000-010.

AVAILABLE FROM Defense Language Institute, Foreign Language Center, Nonresident Division, Presidio of Monterey, CA 93940 (\$5.15; accompanying cassettes \$9.60)

LANGUAGE Chinese; English

EDRS PRICE MF01/PC12 Plus Postage.

DESCRIPTORS Audiolingual Methods; \*Grammar; Ideography; Instructional Materials; \*Mandarin Chinese; \*Military Science; Reading Instruction; \*Second Language Instruction; Second Language Learning; \*Translation; \*Vocabulary Skills; Writing Instruction.

IDENTIFIERS \*Dialogs (Language Learning)

ABSTRACT

This is the second of 16 volumes of audiolingual classroom instruction in Mandarin Chinese. The course is designed to train native English speakers to Level 3 Foreign Service Institute proficiency in comprehension and speaking, and to Level 2 proficiency in reading and writing Mandarin. Volume II introduces the reading and writing of Chinese characters. Instructional materials in the 12 lessons include dialogues, vocabulary lists, grammar analyses, and translation exercises. The emphasis of the course is on military science. (JB)

\*\*\*\*\*  
 \* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made \*  
 \* from the original document. \*  
 \*\*\*\*\*

01CM47

# CHINESE-MANDARIN

## BASIC COURSE

### VOLUME II LESSONS 16-27

ED184313

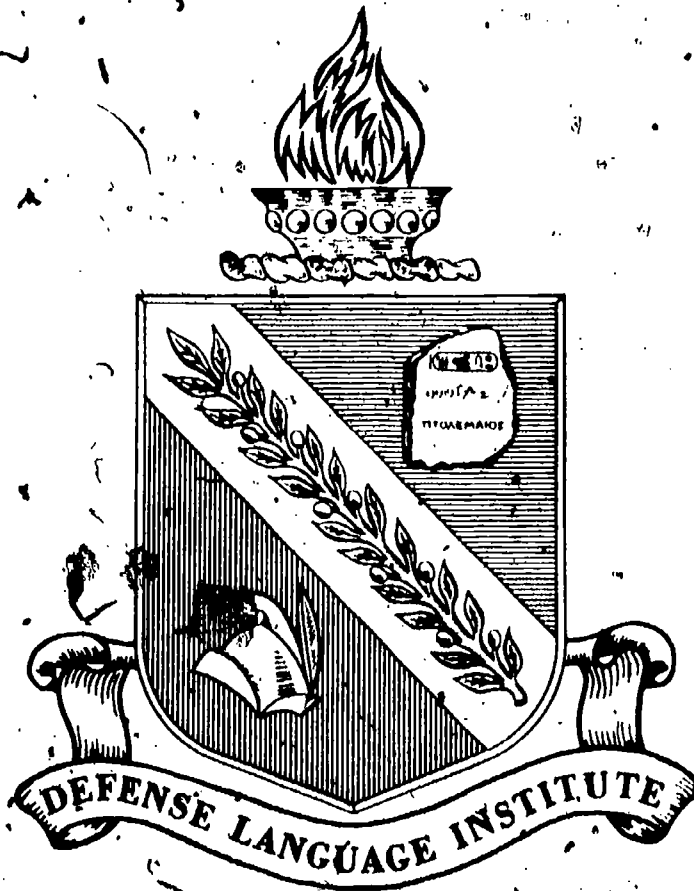
EXPERIMENTAL DESIGN  
AND EVALUATION  
OF INSTRUCTIONAL  
MATERIALS

PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS  
MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY

DLI

THE DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20304

JUNE 1964



FL010.989

# DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

THIS PUBLICATION IS TO BE USED PRIMARILY IN SUPPORT OF TRAINING MILITARY PERSONNEL AS PART OF THE DEFENSE LANGUAGE PROGRAM (RESIDENT AND NON-RESIDENT). INQUIRIES CONCERNING THE USE OF THESE MATERIALS, INCLUDING REQUESTS FOR COPIES, SHOULD BE ADDRESSED TO:

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE, FLC  
NON-RESIDENT OPERATIONS DIVISION  
PRESIDIO OF MONTEREY, CA. 93940

TOPICS IN THE AREAS OF POLITICS, INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS, MORES, ETC., WHICH MAY BE CONSIDERED AS CONTROVERSIAL FROM SOME POINTS OF VIEW ARE SOMETIMES INCLUDED IN LANGUAGE TRAINING FOR DLIFLC STUDENTS, SINCE MILITARY PERSONNEL MAY FIND THEMSELVES IN POSITIONS WHERE CLEAR UNDERSTANDING OF CONVERSATIONS OR WRITTEN MATERIALS OF THIS NATURE WILL BE ESSENTIAL TO THEIR MISSION. THE PRESENCE OF CONTROVERSIAL STATEMENTS—WHETHER REAL OR APPARENT—IN DLIFLC MATERIALS IS NOT TO BE CONSTRUED AS REPRESENTING THE OPINIONS OF THE WRITERS, OF THE DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER, OR OF THE DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE.

CHINESE - MANDARIN  
BASIC COURSE

Volume II

Lessons 16-27

June 1964

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

Reprinted February 1975

Reprinted April 1978

## PREFACE

The Chinese-Mandarin Course, consisting of 180 lessons in 16 volumes, is one of the Defense Language Institute's Basic Course Series. The material was developed at the Defense Language Institute and approved for publication by the Institute's Curriculum Development Board.

The course is designed to train native English language speakers to Level 3 proficiency in comprehension and speaking and Level 2 proficiency in reading and writing Chinese-Mandarin. The texts are intended for classroom use in the Defense Language Institute's intensive programs employing the audio-lingual methodology. Tapes accompany the texts.

T A B L E O F C O N T E N T S

Lesson	Page
16 .....	1
17 .....	19
18 .....	45
19 .....	67
20 .....	91
21 .....	117
22 .....	141
23 .....	169
24 .....	195
25 .....	217
26 .....	243
27 .....	271
Vocabulary Index .....	295

LESSON 16 .

I. Structural Dialogue

1. Syān: Nǐ yào mǎi jǐběn shū? How many books do you want to buy?
- Sywé: Wǒ yào mǎi liǎng-sānběn shū. I want to buy two or three books.
- Syān: Nǐ gēge yào mǎi jǐjiàn chènshān? How many shirts does your elder brother want to buy?
- Sywé: Wǒ gēge yào mǎi sān-sǐjiàn chènshān. My elder brother wants to buy three or four shirts.
- Syān: Nǐ dìdì yào mǎi jǐge gāngkwēi? How many helmets does your younger brother want to buy?
- Sywé: Wǒ dìdì yào mǎi sì-wǔge gāngkwēi. My younger brother wants to buy four or five helmets.
- Syān: Nǐ jiějie yào mǎi jǐjǎng jwōdz? How many tables does your elder sister want to buy?
- Sywé: Tā yào mǎi wǔ-liùjǎng jwōdz. She wants to buy five or six tables.
- Syān: Nǐ mèimei yào mǎi jǐge yǐdz? How many chairs does your younger sister want to buy?
- Sywé: Tā yào mǎi liù-chǐge yǐdz. She wants to buy six or seven chairs.
2. Syān: Nǐ fùchín yǒu jǐge shǒuchyāng? How many pistols does your father have?
- Sywé: Wǒ fùchín yǒu qī-bāge shǒuchyāng. My father has seven or eight pistols.
- Syān: Nǐ mǔchín yǒu duōshǎujǎng huàr? How many pictures does your mother have?

Sywé: Wǒ mǔchīn yǒu bā-jyǒujāng  
hwār.

My mother has eight or  
nine pictures.

3. Syān: Mǎishūde jèige rén  
yǒu jībēn shū?

How many books does the  
man who sells books  
have?

Sywé: Mǎishūde nèige rén yǒu  
lyāng-sānbēn shū.

The man who sells books  
has two or three books.

Syān: Hējyǒude jèige rén yǒu  
jījāng bàu?

How many newspapers does  
the man who drinks  
(wine) have?

Sywé: Hējyǒude nèige rén yǒu  
sān-szjāng bàu.

The man who drinks  
(wine) has three or  
four newspapers.

Syān: Chǎifānde jèige rén yǒu  
jīge língdài?

How many neckties does  
the man who eats  
(food) have?

Sywé: Chǎifānde nèige rén yǒu  
sz-wūge língdài.

The man who eats (food)  
has four or five neck-  
ties.

4. Syān: Nǐ yào shémǎ shū?

What books do you want?

Sywé: Wǒ yào nǐ mǎide nài  
lyāng-sānbēn shū.

I want those two or  
three books you  
bought.

Syān: Nǐ yào shémǎ língdài?

What neckties do you  
want?

Sywé: Wǒ yào sān-szge nàiwei-  
syānsheng mǎide nèige  
língdài.

I want three or four  
neckties (like  
the one) that the  
gentleman bought.

Syān: Nǐ yào shémǎ chènshān?

What shirts do you want?

Sywé: Wǒ yào sz-wūge dzwófānde  
nèige rén mǎide nèige  
chènshān.

I want four or five shirts  
(like the one) that the  
man who prepares food  
bought.

Syān: Nǐ yào shémǎ jwōdè?

What tables do you want?



Sywé: Wǒ yào wǔ-lyòuge hējyǒude  
nèiwei syáujye mǎide  
nèige jwǒdz.

I want five or six tables  
(like the one) that  
the young lady who  
drinks (wine) bought.

5. Syān: Chànggērde nèige rén  
yào shémma hwàr?

What pictures does the  
man who sings (songs)  
want?

Sywé: Chànggērde nèige rén  
yào lyòu-chíjāng  
wǒ mǎide nèige hwàr.

The man who sings (songs)  
wants six or seven  
pictures (like) the one  
I bought.

Syān: Syědzde nèige nán-  
háidz yào shémma  
bǐ?

What pens does the boy  
who writes characters  
want?

Sywé: Syědzde nèige nán-  
háidz yào chí-báge  
nǐ mǎide nèige bǐ.

The boy who writes charac-  
ters wants seven or eight  
pens (like) the one that  
you bought.

II. Basic Dialogue

Bái: Shéi mài fēiji, nǐ  
jǐdau ma?

Do you know who sells  
airplanes?

Lǐ: Wǒ bùjǐdau. Nín chyù  
wèn Wáng Syānsheng.  
Tā jǐdau.

I don't know. You go  
and ask Mr. Wáng.  
He knows.

Bái: Wáng Syānsheng, nín  
jǐdau shéi mài  
fēiji ma?

Mr. Wáng, do you know  
who sells airplanes?

Wáng: Wǒ mài fēiji. Nín yào  
mài syinde ma?

I sell airplanes. Do  
you want to buy a new  
one?

Bái: Nín jyòu yǒu syinde  
ma?

Do you only have new  
ones?

Wáng: Syinde, jyòude, wǒ  
dōu yǒu.

I have both new ones  
and used ones.

Bái: Nínde jyòu fēiji  
shǐ nēi gwóde?

In what country are your  
used airplanes made?

Wáng: Yǒude shǐ Jūnggwóde,  
yǒude shǐ Měigwóde.

Some are made in China, and  
some are made in the  
United States.

Bái: Rénrén dōu shuō nǐde  
fēiji hěn gwèi,  
dwèi búdwèi?

Everyone says that your  
airplanes are very ex-  
pensive; is that  
right?

Wáng: Dwèi. Kěshǐ wǒde  
fēiji dōu hěn  
hǎu.

Right. But all of my  
airplanes are very  
good.

Bái: Syinde dwòshau chyán?

How much for the new  
ones?

Wáng: Lyǎngwàn-wǔchyānkwài  
chyán yige.

\$25,000.00 each.

Bái: Jyòude dwòshau chyán?

How much for the used  
ones?

Wáng: Yiwàn-líng-wǔbǎikwài  
chyán yige.

\$10,500.00 each.

Bái: Wǒ yào mǎi shíge fēijī.

I want to buy ten airplanes.

Wáng: Dōu yào sīyīng de ma?

All new ones?

Bái: Yībàn yào sīyīng de,  
yībàn yào jūyòng de.  
Yīgòng dwōshāu  
chǎn?

Half (of them) new, and  
half (of them) used.  
How much altogether?

Wáng: Yīgòng shíchīwàn-  
chīchǎn-wūbǎikwài  
chǎn.

Altogether \$177,500.00

Bái: Wǒ yīgòng gěi nǐ  
shíwànkwài chǎn,  
hǎu bùhǎu?

I will give you  
\$100,000.00 altogether,  
okay?

Wáng: Nǐn gěi wǒ de chǎn  
bùgòu, wǒ bùmǎi.

The money you offer is  
not enough; I won't  
sell.

Vocabulary

- |     |            |    |     |   |
|-----|------------|----|-----|---|
| 1.  | -bǎi       | 百  | NU: | hundred                                       |
| 2.  | bàn-, -bàn | 半  | NU: | half  |
|     | 2.1 yìbàn  | 一半 | NU: | one half                                      |
| 3.  | -chān      | 千  | NU: | thousand                                      |
| 4.  | duì        | 對  | SV: | be right, correct                             |
| 5.  | gòu        | 夠  | SV: | be sufficient                                 |
| 6.  | guó        | 國  | N:  | country, nation                               |
| 7.  | jīdào      | 知道 | V:  | know, know of or about                        |
| 8.  | jiù        | 就  | A:  | only, just                                    |
| 9.  | líng       | 零  | NU: | zero  |
| 10. | rénrén     | 人人 | N:  | everyone (subject only)                       |
| 11. | -wàn       | 萬  | NU: | ten-thousand                                  |
| 12. | wèn        | 問  | V:  | ask, inquire of or about                      |
| 13. | yìgòng     | 一共 | MA: | altogether, in all                            |
| 14. | yǒude      | 有的 | N:  | some, some of, certain (used only in subject) |

III. Grammar Analysis

1. NUMBERS ABOVE 100: In fractional numbers above 100, the last measure of a series is often dropped:

yībǎi-yī(shí) 110

lyǎngchān-wǔ(bǎi) 2,500

lyòuwān-bā(chān) 68,000

2. LING: Where one or more zeros stand between numbers, the word ling is inserted:

yībǎi-líng-wǔ 105

yīchān-líng-wǔ 1,005

yīchān-líng-wǔshí 1,050

yīwàn-líng-wǔshí 10,050

3. TELEPHONE NUMBERS: In giving numbers "telephone style", cardinal numbers without measures are used, and ling is repeated for each zero:

bā-líng-líng-lyòu-líng 8-0060

chī-líng-jyǒu-líng-líng 7-0900

4. TWO OR THREE: For indefinite expressions like "two or three," use the pattern "two-three:"

yī-lyǎngge rén one or two persons

lyǎng-sānběn shū two or three books

sì-wǔkwài chān four or five dollars

yī-lyǎngchāngge rén one or two thousand people

5. THE WÀN AND WÀNWÀN GROUPS: The next units above the chān (1,000) group are not millions and billions as in English, but wàn (10,000) and wànwàn (100,000,000). This makes the transfer of larger sums into Chinese quite difficult for the Westerner. One way to make this transfer is to point off these higher sums into groups of four digits, rather than the familiar three:

100,000	would be	10,000 (shíwàn)
1,000,000	would be	100,000 (yībǎiwàn)
10,000,000	would be	1000,0000 (yīchiānwàn)
100,000,000	would be	1,0000,0000 (yīwànwàn)
140,000,000	would be	1,4000,0000 (yīwànwàn-sìchānwàn)
450,000,000	would be	4,5000,0000 (sìwànwàn-wūchānwàn)

ER AND LYANG: Either èr or lyǎng may be used in the following higher numbers:

èrbǎi or lyǎngbǎi	200
èrchyān or lyǎngchyān	2,000
èrchyān-èrbǎi or lyǎngchyān-èrbǎi	2,200
èrchyān-lyǎngbǎi or lyǎngchyān-lyǎngbǎi	2,200
èrwàn or lyǎngwàn	20,000

When two of things or persons is indicated, lyǎng with an appropriate measure is used:

lyǎngge rén	Never	èrge rén (two persons)
lyǎngběn shū	Never	èrběn shū (two books)
lyǎngjǎng huà	Never	èrjǎng huà (two pictures)

Lyǎng never stands at the end of a numerical expression:

sānshùr	Never	sānshùlyǎng (32)
sānbǎi-líng-èr	Never	sānbǎi-líng-lyǎng (302)

7. A PIECE: Expressions such as "5¢ a piece," "\$1.00 a volume," etc., are said in Chinese as follows:

wūfēn chān yīgè

yīkuài chān yībēn

The stress usually comes on the last measure, as in English.

EXERCISE

- 1) Read the following numbers in Chinese:

115  
198  
216  
304  
237  
580  
1,078  
2,708  
6,900  
50,682  
44,005

yībǎi-yīshíwǔ

- 2) Read the following telephone numbers in Chinese:

5-1511  
2-4689  
3-0047  
5-0105  
4-2020  
2-2749

wǔ-yī-wǔ-yī-yī

- 3) Translate the following expressions into Chinese:

three or four thousand boys  
one or two hundred girls  
fifty or sixty thousand people  
seventy or eighty thousand soldiers  
thirty or forty thousand officers

- 4) Read the following numbers in Chinese:

200,000  
500,000

2,000,000  
2,500,000  
32,000,000  
428,000,000  
500,000,000

Translate the following:

- 1) Those three or five books you bought are very expensive.
- 2) Those five or six shirts the boy bought are very small.
- 3) The girl who reads newspapers wants those five or six matches.
- 4) The gentleman who prepares food wants those six or seven helmets.
- 5) The lady who smokes wants seven or eight pairs of shoes like the ones that you bought.



IV. Recombination Dialogues

1. Syān: Jèi lyǎngbǎijāng jǐ shǐ shéide? Whose two hundred sheets of paper are these?
- Sywé: Nèi lyǎngbǎijāng jǐ shǐ nèige maibāude. Those two hundred sheets of paper belong to the man who sells newspapers.
- Syān: Nǐ nèi sānchānjāng jǐ dzài nǎr? Where are these 3000 sheets of paper of yours?
- Sywé: Wǒ nèi sānchānjāng jǐ dzài jwōdz shàngtōu. Those 3000 sheets of paper of mine are on the table.
- Syān: Jwōdz syàtōu yǒu shémǎ? What is under the table?
- Sywé: Jwōdz syàtōu yǒu wūwàn-kwài chān. There is \$50,000 under the table.
- Syān: Jwōdz syàtōude chān shǐ shéide? To whom does the money under the table belong?
- Sywé: Jwōdz syàtōude chān shǐ Jāu Jūngwèide. The money under the table belongs to First Lieutenant Jāu.
2. Syān: Lǐ Shàngshǐde chān dzài nǎr? Where is SFC Lǐ's money?
- Sywé: Lǐ Shàngshǐde chān dzài wūdz wàitōu. SFC Lǐ's money is outside the house.
- Syān: Lǐ Shàngshǐ yǒu dwōshāu chān? How much money does SFC Lǐ have?
- Sywé: Lǐ Shàngshǐ yǒu shíwàn-lǐng-sānchān-lǐng-wū-shǐkwài chān. SFC Lǐ has \$103,050.00.
- Syān: Rénrén dōu jǐdāu tā yǒu hěn dwō chān ma? Does everyone know that he has a lot of money?
- Sywé: Yǒude rén jǐdāu, yǒude rén bùjǐdāu. Some people know; and some don't.

L. 16

Syān: Tā tāitai yě yǒu hēn  
duō chān ma?

Does his wife also have  
a lot of money?

Sywé: Tā tāitai yě yǒu hēn  
duō chān.

His wife also has a lot  
of money.

Syān: Tāmen yìgòng yǒu duō-  
shāu chān?

How much money do they  
have altogether?

Sywé: Wǒ bù jīdāu.

I don't know.

Syān: Nǐ chū wèn Lǐ Shàngshì,  
hǎo bùhǎo?

Go and ask SFC LI. How  
about it?

Sywé: Wǒ bùchū wèn, nǐ chū  
wèn.

I won't go and ask (him);  
you go.

Syān: Wǒ yě bùchū.

I won't go either.

Sywé: Nǐ jīdāu Lǐ Shàngshì  
shì nǐ guó rén ma?

Do you know the nationality  
of SFC LI?

Sywé: Tā shì Fǎguó rén.

He is French.

3. Syān: Nǐ yǒu shénme?

What do you have?

Sywé: Wǒ yǒu yìgè xīn chē.

I have a new car.

Syān: Nǐ yào bùyāu mǎi nǐde  
xīn chē?

Will you sell your new  
car?

Sywé: Wǒ yào mǎi.

I want to sell it.

Syān: Duōshāu chān?

How much?

Sywé: Liǎngchān-sāibǎi-  
wǔshíkwài chān.

\$2,450.00

Syān: Wǒ gěi nǐ liǎngchān-  
wǔbǎi-kuài chān, nǐ  
gěi wǒ wǔshíwǔ-kuài  
chān, duō buduō?

I will give you \$2,500.00  
and you give me (back)  
\$55.00. Is that right?

Sywé: Búdù. Wǒ jìyù gěi nǐ  
wǔshíkuài chān.

Not right. I will only  
give you \$50.00.

18

V. READING

\* Characters within parentheses are simplified characters

A. Characters (Nos. 1-15)

1. 一 yī NU: one, a

一月

- January

一個月

- one month

一年

- one year

一起

- together

一共

- all together, in all

2. 二 èr NU: two

二月

- February

禮拜二

- Tuesday

十二個月

- twelve months

二十個人

- twenty persons

3. 三 sān NU: three

三月

- March

三個月

- three months

禮拜三

- Wednesday

4. 四 sì NU: four

四個 gāngkwēi - four helmets

七月四日

- July 4th

5. 五 wǔ NU: five

五 kwài chyán - five dollars

五,六個人

- five or six persons

五百個

sywésheng

- 500 students

L. 16

6. 六 lyàu NU: six

六 bĕn shū - six books

六 kwài 五 - \$6.50

六 七 十 nyán - sixty or seventy years

7. 七 chí NU: seven

七 八 wèi tàitai - seven or eight ladies

一 七 七 六 nyán - the year 1776

8. 八 bā NU: eight

八 十 dwō 人 - eighty odd people

八 月 十 五 - August 15th

9. 九 jyǒu NU: nine

九 個 bàn 月 - nine and a half months

九 十 jǐ 個 人 - ninety odd people

10. 十 shí NU: ten

十 二 月 二 十 五 hòu - December 25th

第 十 個 人 - the tenth person

11. 月 ywè N: month

上 月 shàng 月 - last month

下 月 xià 月 - next month

八 九 月 11 - in August or September

12. 個 gè M: general measure

九 個 人 - nine people

几 個 jǐ 個 - how many

三 十 几 個 sān 十 jǐ 個 - thirty odd

箇 (个)

13. 人 rén N: people, person

人人

- everyone

好人

- good person

Jūngwo 人

- a Chinese or Chinese people

14. 大 dà SV: be large, big

大人

- adult

大 - dyǎr

- a little larger; - a little too big

15. 天 tyān M/N: day

Lìbài 天

- Sunday

天天

- daily

yōu 一天

- one day

jīn 天

- today

dzwó 天

- yesterday

míng 天

- tomorrow

b. Sentences

1. 一個月 yōu dwōshǎu 天?

2. 一月 yōu 三十一 天.

3. 二月 yōu 二十八 天.

4. 三月 yōu 三十一 天.

5. 四月 yōu 三十 天.

6. 五月 yōu 三十一 天.

7. 四月, 六月, 九月, 十一月 dōu yōu 三十 天.

8. 七月、八月、十月、十二月 dōu yǒu 三十一天。

9. 一 Nyán yǒu jǐ 個月？

10. 一 Nyán yǒu 十二個月。

11. 人人 dōu wèn wǒ yǒu jǐ 個 háidz

12. 哪個人 yǒu 一 dyán chyán?

13. 哪 lyǎng 個人, nǎi 個大, nǎi 個 syǎu?

14. 哪 jǐ 個人 天天 一 kwàn chǐfàn?

15. 哪 一 gúng yǒu 七 八 十 個人。

16. 哪 yǒu 一 bàn 人 Libài 六 yě dzwōshr.

17. 大 jūng mài 四 十 五 kwài chyán 一 個。

### C. Story

一 nyán yǒu 十二個月。一月、三月、五月、七月、八月、十月、十二月 dōu yǒu 三十一天。四月、六月、九月、十一月 dōu yǒu 三十天。二月 yǒu 二十八天, yǒu 二十九天。

Yǒu 一天, wǒ wèn 一 個 Jūngwo 人: 「八月、九月

jèi lyǎng 個月 dōu yǒu 三十一天 ma?」 Nǎi 個人 shwō:

八月「大」, yǒu 三十一天 ; 九月 'syǎu', yǒu 三十天。

VI. WRITING

## A. Writing (Characters 1-10)

一 二 三 四 五  
六 七 八 九 十

## B. Basic Strokes in the Chinese Character Writing

1. 一 héng (horizontal stroke) as in: 一 二 三 十

2. 丿 dwǎnyǒu (short down-stroke made from right to left) as in: 八

3. 丨 chángyǒu (long down-stroke made from right to left) as in: 九

4. 丶 dǎo (dot) as in: 六

5. 丨 shù (vertical stroke) as in: 十



LESSON 17

I. Structural Dialogue

1. Syān: Jèiběn shū mài dwōshau chyan? What does this book sell for?
- Sywé: Jèiběn shū mài lyǎngkwàibàn. This book sells for \$2.50.
- Syān: Jèi 個 bǐ mài dwōshau chyan? What does this pen sell for?
- Sywé: Jèi 個 bǐ mài 三 kwài bàn. This pen sells for \$3.50.
- Syān: Jèi 個 jwōdz mài dwōshau chyan? What does this table sell for?
- Sywé: Jèi 個 jwōdz mài 七 kwàibàn. This table sells for \$7.50.
- Syān: Nèi 個 yǐdz mài dwōshau chyan? What does that chair sell for?
- Sywé: Nèi 個 yǐdz mài 八 kwàibàn. That chair sells for \$8.50.
- Syān: Nèi 個 língdài mài dwōshau chyan? What does that necktie sell for?
- Sywé: Nèi 個 língdài mài bànkwài chyan. That necktie sells for \$.50.

2. Syān: Nín mǎi shénma?

What do you sell?

Sywé: Wǒ mǎi chíchē gēn  
fēijī.

I sell automobiles  
and airplanes.

Syān: Nín nàige syīn chíchē  
dwōshau chyán?

What does that new car  
of yours sell for?

Sywé: 九百五十 元 kwài chyán.

\$950.00.

Syān: Nín jèi liǎng-ge  
jyòu chíchē dōu mǎi  
dwōshau chyán?

What do these two or  
three used cars of  
yours sell for?

Sywé: 六百元 五元 一个  
chyán 一个。

\$695.00 each.

Syān: Jèi wǔ-ge syīn  
fēijī dwōshau  
chyán 一个?

How much for each of  
these five or six new  
airplanes?

Sywé: 五万四千元 一个  
chyán 一个。

\$54,000.00 each.

Syān: Nàige jyòu  
fēijī dwōshau chyán  
一个?

How much for each of  
those seven or eight  
used airplanes?

Sywé: 一千元 五百元 一个  
chyán 一个。

\$1,500 each.

3. Syān: Wǒ kěyī hējiǔ ma? May I drink wine?

Sywé: Nǐ bùkěyī hējiǔ. Nǐ  
tài xiǎo. You may not drink wine.  
You're too young.

Syān: Wǒ kěyī mǎi jiǔ ma? May I buy wine?

Sywé: Nǐ yě bùkěyī mǎi  
jiǔ. Nǐ shì xiǎo- You may not buy wine  
háizǐ. either. You're a  
child.

Syān: Tā kěyī hējiǔ ma? May he drink wine?

Sywé: Tā kěyī hējiǔ. Tā shì  
dàrén. He may drink wine.  
He is an adult.

4. Syān: Nǐ yuàn yì syě Rìběn Are you willing to  
dǎzì ma? write Japanese  
characters?

Sywé: Wǒ bùyuàn yì. I am not willing to.

Syān: Nǐ gēge yuàn yì syě Rìběn Is your elder brother  
dǎzì ma? willing to write  
Japanese characters?

Sywé: Tā yě bùyuàn yì. He isn't willing to  
either.

Syān: Jwōdz chyántoude nèi 个  
háidz ywanyi chànggēr  
ma?

Is that child in front  
of the table willing  
to sing?

Sywé: Jwōdz chyántoude nèi 个  
háidz ywanyi chànggēr.

That child in front of  
the table is willing  
to sing.

5. Syān: Wǒ yào nǐ lái chànggēr,  
nǐ néngbùnéng lái?

I want you to come and  
sing, will you  
able to come?

Sywé: Wǒ sǐhwān chànggēr,  
kěshr wǒ bùnéng lái.

I like to sing, but I  
shall not be able to  
come.

Syān: Wǒ yào nǐ lái, nǐ  
nénglái bùnénglái?

I want you to come, will  
you be able to come?

Sywé: Nǐ yào wǒ lái, wǒ yě  
bùnénglái.

I will not be able to  
make it either.

6. Syān: Jèi 个 bǐ dwōshau chyán?

How much is this pen?

Sywé: Lyǎngmáu 五 fēn chyán.

Twenty-five cents.

Syān: Nèi 个 bǐ dwōshau chyán?

How much is that pen?

Sywé: Lyǎngmáu 五 .

Twenty-five cents.

Syān: Nèiběn shū dwōshau  
chyán?

How much is that book?

Sywé: 三 kwài 二 máu chyán.

Three dollars and twenty  
cents.

Syān: Jèiběn shū dwōshau chyán?

How much is this book?

Sywé: Yě shr̄ 三 kwài 二 .

Three dollars and twenty  
cents, too.

Syān: Nèi 個 mǎudz dwōshau  
chyán?

How much is that hat?

Sywé: 五 kwài-líng 五 fēn  
chyán.

Five dollars and five  
cents.

Syān: Jèi 個 mǎudz dwōshau  
chyán?

How much is this hat?

Sywé: 五 kwài-líng 五 .

Five dollars and five  
cents.

Syān: Jèi 三個 syín mǎudz,  
dwōshau chyán 一個 ?

How much are these  
three new hats a piece?

Sywé: 六 kwài 五 .

Six dollars and fifty  
cents.

Syān: Shr̄ 六 kwài-líng 五 fēn  
chyán ma?

Is it six dollars and  
five cents?

Sywé: Búshr. Shr 六 kwàibàn.

No, it is six dollars  
and a half.

II. Basic Dialogue

- Bái: Jāng SyInsheng, nín yǒu jǐ 個 hǎo péngyǒu?  
How many good friends do you have, Mr. Jāng?
- Jāng: 七 八 個。  
Seven or eight.
- Bái: Nín syihwan gēn nǐ 個 — kwà nyànshu?  
Which one do you like to study with?
- Jāng: Lǐ Jūngwèi.  
First Lieutenant Lǐ.
- Bái: Wèishémma?  
Why?
- Jāng: Lǐ Jūngwèi jēn 'tsūng-ming, yě hěn kèchǐ.  
First Lieutenant Lǐ is really intelligent and very polite.
- Bái: Tā yǒu jǐ 個 hái dz?  
How many children does he have?
- Jāng: Lyǎng 個 érdz, sān 個 nyūer.  
Two boys and three girls.
- Bái: Nín ywànyì dàu tā jyā chyù ma?  
Are you willing to go to his house?
- Jāng: Wǒ hěn ywànyì dàu tā jyā chyù.  
I am very willing to go to his house.

Bái: Lǐ Jūngwèi sīhwan.  
tā nèsyē hái dz ma?

Does First Lieutenant Li  
like those children  
of his?

Jāng: Hěn sīhwan. Tā nèsyē  
hái dz yě hěn sīhwan  
tā.

Yes, indeed. Those  
children of his like  
him very much too.

Bái: Tā jyā lítou yǒu  
jī 個 大人?

How many adults are  
there in his family?

Jāng: Yǒu 四個. Yǒu tā, tā  
tāitai gēn tā fùmǔ.

There are four. They  
are: he himself, his  
wife and his parents.

Bái: Tāde 大 兒 dz hwèi  
dzwòfàn ma?

Can his eldest son cook?

Jāng: Búhwèi dzwò, kěshr jēn  
néng chī.

No, he can't, but he  
surely can eat.

Bái: Lǐ Jūngwèide fùmǔ  
dōu hěn hǎu ma?

How are First Lieutenant  
Li's parents?

Jāng: Dōu hěn hǎu. Tāde fùchīn  
dzwò mǎimai. Tāde  
mǔchīn hwèi dzwò yishang.

They are all fine. His  
father is in business,  
and his mother can sew.

Bái: Tā tāitai hwèi shémǎ?

What can his wife do?

Jāng: Wǒ bùjīdāu.

I don't know.



Bái: Tā fùchín dzwò shémma  
mǎimai?

What kind of business  
is his father in?

Jāng: Mài shū, yě mài bǐ.

Selling books and pens.

Bái: Bǐ mài dwōshau chyán?

How much are the pens?

Jāng: Yǒu gwèide, yě yǒu  
pyányide.

There are expensive and  
also cheap ones.

Bái: Gwèide dwōshau chyán?

How much are the expen-  
sive ones?

Jāng: Gwèide bǐ mài 三 kwài  
二 mǎu 五 fēn chyán  
一個。

Expensive pens sell for  
three dollars and  
twenty-five cents each.

Bái: Pyányide bǐ mài  
dwōshau chyán?

How much are the cheap  
pens?

Jāng: 一 kwài-líng 五  
一個。

One dollar and five  
cents each.

Bái: Tāde pùdz kēyí mài  
jyǒu ma?

Can he sell wine in his  
shop?

Jāng: Bùkēyí.

No, he can't.

Bái: Kēyí mài hwàr ma?

Can he sell pictures?

Jāng: Kéyi. Kěshr tā  
būywànyì mǎi hwàr.

Yes, he can. But he  
doesn't want to sell  
pictures.

Bái: Tāde pùdz dzài syāngsya  
ma?

Is his shop in the  
country?

Jāng: Búdzài syāngsya, dzài  
chénglītou.

No, not in the country.  
It's in the city.

Bái: Syàndzài tā dzài nǎr?

Where is he now?

Jāng: Syàndzài tā dzài pùdz  
lītou, kěshr Lǐ  
Jūngwèi dzài jyā.

Now he is in the store,  
but First Lieutenant Lǐ  
is at home.

Bái: Wǒ méi chyan kéyi.  
bùkéyi dàu tāde  
pùdz chyù mǎi shū?

I don't have money. Can  
I go to his store to  
buy a book?

Jāng: Wǒ bùdǔng nǐde yìsz.

I don't know what you  
mean.

Bái: Wǒ syàndzài yào mǎi  
běn shū, kěshr wǒ  
méi chyan.

I want to buy a book  
now, but I don't  
have the money.

Jāng: Wǒ bùjǐdau. Nǐ kéyi  
chyù wèn Lǐ Jūngwèide  
fùchin.

That I don't know. You  
may go and ask First  
Lieutenant Lǐ's  
father.

Bái: Tā hěn kèchǐ ma?

Is he very courteous?

Jāng: Lǐ Jūngwèi jǐa  
lǐtōude dōu  
hěn kèchǐ.

First Lieutenant Li's  
folks are all very  
courteous.

Bái: Hǎo. Wǒ syàndzài chū.  
wèn tā.

Fine. I will go and ask  
him now.

## Vocabulary

15. dàrén 大人 N: adult, grownup
16. érđz 兒子 N: son
17. -fēn 分 M: cent
18. fùmǔ 父母 N: parents
19. jēn 真 A: truly, really
20. kéyǐ 可以 AV: may, can, be permitted to
21. kèqì 客氣 SV: be polite, stand on ceremony
22. mǎimài 買賣 N: business (buy-sell)
23. -máo 毛 M: dime
24. néng 能 AV: can, be able to
25. nǚer 女兒 N: daughter
26. syàndzài 現在 MA: now, at present
27. syāngsya 鄉下 N: country (rural)
28. -syē 些 NU: several; quantity of
29. yìsz 意思 N: idea, meaning
30. ywànyì 願意 AV: wish to, be willing to

III. Grammar Analysis

## 1. Money Expressions

Money expressions are formed by using numbers and appropriate measures before the noun chyán. The commonest measures are -kwài (dollar), -máu (dime) and -fēn (cent). When more than one measure is used, the larger units precede the smaller units. Money expressions are often abbreviated, dropping such words as are easily understood from the context.

wūfēn chyán	\$ 0.05
sānmáu chyán	0.30
wǔkwài chyán	5.00
yímáu wūfēn chyán	0.15
shèrkwài lyòumáu chyán	12.60
yímáu	0.10
lyòukwài chímáuwǔ	6.75

Translate the following:

- 1) Please give me fifteen cents.
- 2) I don't have five dollars. I have four dollars and fifty cents.
- 3) His boy wants twenty-five cents to buy candy.
- 4) Give me a dollar and twenty-five cents. I want to buy a pen.
- 5) I don't have a dollar and twenty-five cents. I will give you ninety cents.

## 2. Asking Prices

In asking and giving prices, sometimes a verb such as shr (is) or mái (sell for) is used, but usually the verb is not necessary.

Jèige jwōdz mǎi dwōshau. chyán?	What does this table sell for?
Nèige yǐdz shr jǐkwài chyán?	How many dollars is that chair?
Bǐ jímǎu chyán?	How many dimes for the pencil?
Jǐ jǐfēn chyán?	How many cents for the paper?

Translate the following:

- 1) What does a shirt sell for?
- 2) Five dollars for a shirt.
- 3) How much for this necktie?
- 4) That necktie sells for a dollar and twenty-five cents.
- 5) This table sells for ten dollars and that chair sells for two dollars and fifty cents.

## 3. Auxiliary Verbs (AV)

An auxiliary verb immediately precedes the main verb. (See lesson 6, note 2.) The main verb may be omitted if the meaning is clear from the context. For the negative form, the particle bù- goes to the auxiliary verb not the main verb. The English auxiliary verb "can" is freely used to cover the meanings "can", "may", and "know how to".

Similar looseness in use is common in Chinese. Essentially, néng (can) implies physical ability, hwèi (know how to) implies acquired ability and kéyi (may) implies permissibility.

Tā hwèi shuō Jūnggwo  
hwà, kěshì bùhwèi  
syē Jūnggwo dz.

He can speak Chinese but  
can't write Chinese  
characters.

Syàn zài nǐ néng dǎu  
wǒ jyā lái ma?

Can you come to my  
house now?

Nǐ kéyi dzài wǒ jyā  
chīfàn.

You may eat at my  
house.

Wǒ tàitai hwèi dzwò  
Jūnggwo fàn.

My wife can cook Chinese  
food.

Translate the following:

- 1) Can you meet me at the railway station?
- 2) No, I can't. I don't have a car.
- 3) Can you drive a car?
- 4) Children may not drink wine. Nor can they smoke.
- 5) I don't like to go to San Francisco by airplane;  
I like to go by train.
- 6) I wish to go to buy it now.

#### 4. Exercise

一 kwài chyán	\$1.00
二 kwài chyán	2.00
三 kwài chyán	3.00
四 kwài chyán	4.00
五 kwài chyán	5.00
六 kwài chyán	6.00

七 kwài chyán	\$7.00
八 kwài chyán	8.00
九 kwài chyán	9.00
十 kwài chyán	10.00
一 máu chyán	0.10
lyǎngmáu chyán	0.20
三 máu chyán	0.30
四 máu chyán	0.40
五 máu chyán	0.50
六 máu chyán	0.60
七 máu chyán	0.70
八 máu chyán	0.80
九 máu chyán	0.90
一 fēn chyán	0.01
lyǎngfēn chyán	0.02
三 fēn chyán	0.03
四 fēn chyán	0.04
五 fēn chyán	0.05
六 fēn chyán	0.06
七 fēn chyán	0.07
八 fēn chyán	0.08
九 fēn chyán	0.09
一 máu chyán	0.10
一 máu- 一 fēn chyán	0.11
一 máu- 二 fēn chyán	0.12



一 máu- 三 fēn chyán	\$0.13
一 máu- 四 fēn chyán	0.14
一 máu- 五 fēn chyán	0.15
一 máu- 六 fēn chyán	0.16
一 máu- 七 fēn chyán	0.17
一 máu- 八 fēn chyán	0.18
一 máu- 九 fēn chyán	0.19
lyángmáu- 二 fēn chyán	0.22
三 máu- 二 fēn chyán	0.32
四 máu- 三 fēn chyán	0.43
五 máu- 四 fēn chyán	0.54
六 máu- 五 fēn chyán	0.65
七 máu- 六 fēn chyán	0.76
八 máu- 七 fēn chyán	0.87
九 máu- 八 fēn chyán	0.98
lyángmáu- 五 fēn chyán	0.25
七 máu- 五 fēn chyán	0.75
三 kwài- 五 máu chyán	3.50
三 kwài 五	3.50
三 kwài- 五 máu- 六 fēn chyán	3.56
三 kwài- 五 máu 六	3.56
五 kwài- líng- 五 fēn chyán	5.05
五 kwài- líng- 五	5.05
八 kwài- líng- 九 fēn chyán	8.09
八 kwài- líng- 九	8.09
十 kwài- 五 máu chyán	10.50

十 kwài- 五 máu	10.50
十 kwài-líng- 五 fēn chyán	10.05
十 kwài-líng- 五 fēn	10.05
十三 kwài- 四 máu chyán	13.40
十三 kwài 四	13.40
十三 kwài-líng- 四 fēn chyán	13.04
十三 kwài-líng- 四 fēn	13.04
十三 kwài-líng- 四	13.04

IV. Recombination Dialogue

1. Syān: 大人 kényi kāi  
chíchē ma?

Can adults drive cars?

Sywé: 大人 kényi kāi  
chíchē.

Adults can drive cars.

Syān: Syāuháidz kényi  
búkényi kāi chíchē?

Can children drive  
cars?

Sywé: Syāuháidz búkényi  
kāi chíchē.

Children are not allowed  
to drive cars.

Syān: Nyǔ 人 hwèi kāi  
chíchē ma?

Can women drive cars?

Sywé: Yǒude nyǔ 人 hwèi kāi  
chíchē.

Some women can drive  
cars.

Syān: Tāmèn jēn ywànyì kāi  
chíchē ma?

Are they really willing  
to drive?

Sywé: Yǒude ywànyì, yǒude  
búywànyì.

Some are willing to;  
some are not willing  
to.

Syān: Hējyǒu de nèi 個  
nán 人 kényi kāi  
fēijī ma?

Can the man who is  
drinking pilot an air-  
plane?

Sywé: Tā hwèi kái fēiji,  
kěshì tā bùkěyì  
kái; yīnwei ta  
hē hěn duō jiǔ.

He knows how to fly an  
airplane, but he is  
not permitted to do  
it; because he drinks  
a lot everyday.

2. Syān: Lǐbài 一 Jāng Shàngwèi  
yǒu shénma shì?

What is Captain Jāng  
going to do on Monday?

Sywé: Lǐbài 一 Jāng Shàngwèi  
yào kàn bào.

Captain Jāng wants to  
read newspapers Monday.

Syān: Lǐbài 二 Jāng Shàngwèi  
yǒu shénma shì?

What is Captain Jāng  
going to do on Tuesday?

Sywé: Lǐbài 二 Jāng Shàngwèi  
yào kái fēiji.

Captain Jāng wants to fly  
an airplane on Tuesday.

Syān: Lǐbài 三 tā nǚèr yǒu  
shénma shì?

What is his daughter  
going to do on Wednes-  
day?

Sywé: Lǐbài 三 tā nǚèr yào  
mǎi shū.

His daughter wants to  
buy books on Wednesday.

Syān: Lǐbài 四 tā nǚèr yǒu  
shénma shì?

What is his daughter  
going to do on Thurs-  
day?

Sywé: Lǐbài 四 tā nyǔer yào  
syědž.

His daughter wants to  
write characters on  
Thursday.

Syān: Lǐbài 五 nǐ fùmǔ yǒu  
shémǎ shì?

What are your parents  
going to do on Friday?

Sywé: Lǐbài 五 wǒ fùmǔ yào  
dàu syāngsya chyù.

My parents want to go to  
the countryside on  
Friday.

Syān: Lǐbài 六 nǐ yǒu  
shémǎ shì?

What are you going to  
do on Saturday?

Sywé: Lǐbài 六 wǒ yào  
chànggē. Chànggē  
jēn yǒuyisz.

I want to sing on Satur-  
day. Singing is  
really interesting.

3. Syān: Nǐ Lǐbài 天 yǒu  
shémǎ shì?

What are you going to do  
on Sunday?

Sywé: Wǒ Lǐbài 天 yào  
dàu syāngsya chyù kàn  
péngyou.

I want to go to the  
country on Sunday to  
visit friends.

Syān: Nèi 個 syāngsyade 人  
kèchǐ búkèchǐ?

Are the people in the  
country polite?

Sywé: Nèi 個 syāngsyade 人  
dōu hěn kèchǐ.

All the people in the  
country are very  
polite.

Syān: Ní syàndzai yǒu shémma  
shr?

Are you busy right now?

Sywé: Wǒ syàndzai méi shr.

I have nothing to do  
right now.

Syān: Nèisyē syǎuháidz 天天  
yǒu shémma shr?

What do those children  
do everyday?

Sywé: Nèisyē syǎuháidz 天天  
chǎnfàn.

Those children eat  
everyday.

V. READINGA. Characters (Nos. 16-23)

16. 我 wǒ	N: I, me	我們	- we, us
		我們 de	- our, ours
		我家	- my home
17. 你 nǐ	N: you (singular)	你 de	- your, yours (singular)
		你們	- you (plural)
		你們 de	- you, yours (plural)
18. 他 tā	N: he, she, him, her	他 de	- his, her, hers
		他們	- they, them
		他們 de	- their, theirs
19. 們 men	BF: (pluralizing suffix)	我們	- we, us
		háidz 們	- children
		péngyǒu 們	- friends
20. 是 shì	V: am, are, is	是 不是?	- isn't it so?
		可是	- but
21. 有 yǒu	V: have, has; there is or are	有人 shuō	- some say
		有 chǎn	- wealthy
		有 (de) shíhòu	- sometimes
		有 de	- some .....
		有 yǐsz	- interesting

L. 17

22. 沒	méi	A: (negative prefix)	沒 chyán	- poor
沒		V: have not	沒 mǎi	- didn't buy
			沒 shemma	- don't mention it

23. 也	yě	A: also, too, either; both--and...	我也 chyù	- I'll go too
			也有 chyán 也	- both rich and handsome
			hǎukàn	

B. Sentences

1. 我有 shū 他有 bǐ.
2. 你沒有 gēge, 也沒有 didi.
3. 我們五個人 dōu 有 chyán.
4. 他們九個人 dōu 沒 chyán.
5. 你們七個人 dōu 是大人.
6. 他們八個人也 dōu 是大人.
7. 六月有三十天, 九月也有三十天.
8. 我們 dōu 有大 jwōdz.
9. 他們也 dōu 有大 jwōdz.
10. Nèr 一 gùng 有四個人 hwèi dzwò mǎimai.
11. Jèi 一個 nyǔ 人有七八 máu chyán.
12. 我天天有 chyán, kě 是他天天沒有 chyán.



13. 大人有 péngyou, syǎuháidz 也有 péngyou.
14. 我,你,他.我們三個人 dōu 是大人.
15. 你 nèi 八個 péngyou, 有 de 是大人, 有 de  
bú 是大人.
16. 我 hěn syǐhwan 他們九個人.
17. kě 是我 bù syǐhwan nèi 四五個大人.
18. 你 wèn 他們 nèi 個 dūngsyi mài dwōshau chyán 一個.

### C. Story

我 jyā 有四個大人, 沒有 syǎuháidz. 我, 我太太 gēn  
我 tàitaidē fùmǔ, 我們四個人天天 dzài 一  
kwàr chǎfàn, shwōhwà 我 tàitaidē mǔchín 是 syāngsya 人. 他  
něn búkěchi, 也 tài ài shwōhwa, 我 bunnéng nyànshu. 我 gēn  
我 tàitai shwō: 「他們 kéyi dàu 你 gēgo jyǎli chyù ma?」  
他 shwō: 「我 fùmǔ 也是你 fùmǔ, jèi 個月是五月,  
七, 八月他們 búdzài jēr .」. 我 shwō: 「他們 dàu  
nǎr chyù?」 我太太 shwō: 「Gēn 我們 一kwàr dàu  
Jūngwo chyù.」

## A. Writing (Characters 11-15)

個 人 大 天 月

## B. Basic Strokes in the Chinese Character Writing

1. \ nàgr (downstroke from left to right) as in: 人

大 天

2. | gōur (a hook) as in: 月

## C. Radicals

1. 亻 or 人 (men, 9\*) as in: 個, 人

2. 大 (great, 37\*) as in: 天, 大

3. 月 (moon, 74\*) as the word: 月

\* These are radical numbers as listed in Fenn's and in Mathew's dictionaries. There is a total of 214 in number.

LESSON 18

I. Structural Dialogue

1. A: Nèi 個 hái dz j y à u  
shé m m a ?

What is the name of  
that child?

B: Nèi 個 hái dz ?

Which one?

A: Hwáh w à r d e n èi 個 hái dz .

The one who is drawing.

B: Hwáh w à r d e n èi 個 hái dz  
j y à u S y à u 二 .

The child who is drawing  
is named Syáu è r .

A: 他 是 shéi d a é r d z ?

Whose son is he?

B: 他 是 j y à u 我 們  
Yíng w én (d e) n èi w èi  
s y à n s h e n g d e é r d z .

He is the son of that  
teacher who teaches us  
English.

A: J y à u 我 們 chāng g ě r d e  
n èi w èi t ài t ài 是  
他 d e m ŭ c h i n m a ?

Is the lady who teaches  
us singing his  
mother?

B: 我 s y ā n g b ú 是 .

I think she is not.

2. A: Nèi 個 s y ā n g s y a 人  
chōu shé m m a y ā n ?

What is that man from  
the country smoking?

B: Nèi 個 s y ā n g s y a 人  
chōu Měi g w o y ā n .

That man from the  
country is smoking an  
American cigarette.

A: Nèi 個 chōuyānde  
syāngsya 人 dài  
shémma màudz?

What kind of hat is that  
man from the country who  
is smoking wearing?

B: Nèi 個 chōuyānde  
syāngsya 人 dài  
Jūnggwo màudz.

That man from the country  
who is smoking is wear-  
ing a Chinese hat.

3. A: 我 kéyi kankan 你 de  
shū ma?

May I take a look at your  
book?

B: 你 kéyi kàn - kàn.

You may take a look.

A: Shūlide dǐ 我 kéyi  
wèn - wèn ma?

May I ask about the  
characters in the  
book?

B: Shūlide dǐ 你 kéyi  
wènwen.

You may ask about the  
characters in the book.

4. A: Jèi 個 màudz 大 bu 大?

Is this hat big?

B: 我 bujǐdàu, chǐng  
dài - dài.

I don't know. Please  
put it on.

A: Jèijyan yishang syāu  
busyāu?

Is this suit small?

B: 我 bujǐdàu, chǐng 你  
chwānchwan.

I don't know. Please  
put it on.

5. A: Jūngwo dǐ háusyě  
ma?

Are Chinese characters  
easy to write?

B: 我 buhwèi syě. 我  
kéyi sywésywe.

I can't write them. But  
I can learn.

A: 你 syède Jūngwo dǐ  
dwèi ma?

Are the Chinese charac-  
ters you write correct?

B: 我 syésyē, 你  
kànkàn.

I'll write a few and  
you can have a look.

6. A: 我們 dzài nǎr  
chǎfàn?

Where do we eat?

B: Dzài 他們 nèr  
chǎfàn.

We eat at their place.

A: 我們 dzài shémma  
dìfang hējyǒu?

Where do we drink?

B: 也 dzài 他們 nèr  
hējyǒu.

Also at their place.

A: 你 dàu nǎr chyū  
chànggēr?

Where are you going  
to sing?

B: 我 dàu 你 jèr  
lai chànggēr.

I will come to your place  
to sing.

A: Jāng Shīgwānjāng dau  
nār chy kànshū?

Where is Master Ser-  
geant Jāng going to  
read?

B: 他 dāu 我 jèr lái  
kànshū.

He is coming to my  
place to read.

II. Basic Dialogue

Bái: Jāng Syānsheng, 我  
wèn nín -jyàn  
shrching, sying búsying?

Mr. Jāng, is it all right  
for me to ask you  
something?

Jāng: Sying. Bái Shàngwèi,  
chǐng dzwò, chǐng  
dzwò!

It is all right. Cap-  
tain Bái, sit down  
please.

Bái: Búkèchi, búkèchi, 我,  
jyòu 有 -jyàn shr.

Don't stand on cere-  
mony. I have only  
one thing to ask you.

Jāng: Shéma shr? Chǐng  
shwō.

What is it? Tell me  
please.

Bái: Nín néng bünéng  
-jyāu Yīngwén?

Can you teach English?

Jāng: Shéi syǎng sywé  
Yīngwén?

Who wishes to learn  
English?

Bái: 我 nyüer syǎng  
sywé Yīngwén.

My daughter wishes to  
learn English.

Jāng: 我 búsying, 我 syǎng  
lóushangde Lǐ  
Syānsheng sying.

I can't but I believe  
Mr. Lǐ upstairs can.

Bái: Lǐ Syānshengde Yīngwén  
hěn hǎu ma?

Is Mr. Lǐ very good in  
English?

Jāng: Lǐ Syānshengde gēge,  
didi, érdz, nyüer de  
Yīngwén dōu hěn hǎu,  
kě 是 他 de Yīngwén  
dzwèi hǎu.

Mr. Lǐ's elder and  
younger brothers,  
sons and daughters  
are all very good in  
English, but Mr. Lǐ  
is the best.

Bái: Nín syāng 他 一dìng  
kényi jyāu ma?

Are you sure that he can  
teach?

Jāng: 我們 一kwār dàu  
lóushang chyù wénwen.

Let us go upstairs to-  
gether and ask.

(Lyāng 個 人 dōu  
jànchǐlai, dàu  
lóushang chyù.)

(Both stand up and go  
upstairs)

Jāng: Lǐ Syānsheng, jèiwèi 是  
Bái Shàngwèi.

Mr. Lǐ, this is Cap-  
tain Bái.

Lǐ: Bái Shàngwèi, nín tsúng  
shémma dìfang lái?

Where do you come from,  
Captain Bái?

Bái: 我 tsúng Jāng Syānsheng  
nèr lái.

I come from Mr. Jāng's  
place.

Lǐ: Chǐng dzwò, chǐng  
dzwò!

Please sit down!



(三個人 dōu  
dzwòsya).

(The three men sit  
down)

Jāng: Bái Shàngwèide nyüer  
syǎng sywé Yīngwén,  
nín kéyi jyāujyāu  
ma?

Captain Bái's daughter  
wishes to learn  
English. Can you  
teach her?

Lǐ: Kéyi. Kéyi.

Yes, I can.

Bái: 我 nyüer dàu nín jèr  
lái, hǎu bùhau?

How about letting her  
come to your place?

Lǐ: Dōu sying. Tā kéyi  
dàu 我 jèr lái, 我  
也 kéyi dàu nín nèr  
chyü.

She can come to my  
place or I can go to  
your place. Either  
way will do.

Jāng: Yīnwei 我 jīdau nín kéyi.  
jyāu Yīngwén, swóyi 我們  
dàu nín jèr lái kàn  
nín.

We came here to see you  
because I know you  
can teach English.

Lǐ: Jāng Syānsheng, nín wèi-  
shéma bùjyāu 他  
nyüer Yīngwén?

Mr. Jāng, why don't  
you teach his  
daughter?

Jāng: 我 büsyīng. 我 jyāu  
他 nyüer hwähwār.

I can't. I am teach-  
ing her painting.

Lǐ: 他 syihwan hwà shémma?

What does she like to  
paint?

Bái: 我 nyüer syihwan hwà  
chìchē, fēijī, lóu  
gēn shù.

My daughter likes to  
paint cars, airplanes,  
buildings and trees.

Lǐ: Chǐng 你們 hē dyār  
jyōu, hǎu bùhǎu?

May I offer you a  
drink?

Bái: Búkèchǐ. 我 kēyi hē  
— dyār shǔwēi, bùnéng  
hējyōu. Yīnwèi wǒ  
yào kāichē.

You don't have to do  
that. I can have a little  
water, but I can't  
drink, because I will  
be driving.

Jāng: Bái Shàngwēi, nǐn hēhe.  
Jèi 個 jyōu jēn  
hǎuhē. Nǐn bù — dǐng  
yào kāichē, nǐn nyüer  
kēyi kāi.

Have a drink, Captain  
Bái. This wine tastes  
really good. You  
don't have to drive.  
Your daughter can drive.

Bái: 你們 jànde 人 dōu  
jēn kèchǐ.

You people are really  
kind.

Vocabulary

- |     |              |     |           |   |
|-----|--------------|-----|-----------|---|
| 31. | bùyiding     | 不一定 | A:        | uncertain, not necessarily                                |
| 32. | chǐng dzwò   | 請坐  | IE:       | please sit down!  |
| 33. | difang       | 地方  | N:        | place   |
| 34. | dzwèi        | 最   | A:        | the most, -est  |
| 35. | dzwòsya      | 坐下  | V:        | sit down  |
| 36. | hwà          | 畫   | V:        | draw or paint   |
| 37. | jàn          | 站   | V:        | stand   |
| 38. | jànchilai    | 站起來 | V:        | stand up  |
| 39. | lóu          | 樓   | N:        | storied building  |
| 40. | loushang     | 樓上  | N:        | upstairs  |
| 41. | shwèi        | 水   | N:        | water   |
| 42. | swóyi        | 所以  | MA:       | therefore, so   |
| 43. | syāngsya rén | 鄉下人 | N:        | country people  |
| 44. | syǎng        | 想   | V:<br>AV: | think, think about, desire<br>consider, plan to, want, to |
| 45. | sying        | 行   | SV:       | be satisfactory, all right,<br>"can do"                   |
| 46. | yiding       | 一定  | A:        | certainly, definitely                                     |
| 47. | Yingwén      | 英文  | N:        | English language  |

III. Grammar Analysis

## 1. Relation of Clauses to Other Qualifying Elements

When a noun is already specified, or both specified and numbered, the modifying clause usually stands in front of these specifying elements. Compare the following expressions: (see Lessons 14 and 15)

- |     |                                  |   |
|-----|----------------------------------|---|
| 1.1 | nèige rén                        | that man  |
|     | shwōhwàde nèige rén              | the man who is speaking (say-thingsde the -man)                   |
| 1.2 | nèiwèi syānsheng                 | that gentleman (or teacher)                                       |
|     | jyāu Yīngwen de nèiwèi syānsheng | the gentleman who teaches English (teach-Englishde the-gentleman) |
| 1.3 | jèi lyǎngge háidz                | these two children  |
|     | nyànshūde jèi lyǎngge háidz      | the two children who are studying (study-bookde the-two-children) |
| 1.4 | nèisye sywésheng                 | those students  |
|     | chànggēde nèisye sywésheng       | the students who are singing (sing-songsd the-several-students)   |
| 1.5 | jèige byǎu                       | this watch  |
|     | wǒ jèige byǎu                    | this watch of mine  |
|     | wǒ mǎide jèige byǎu              | the watch (here) that I bought (I-boughtde the-watch)             |
| 1.6 | nèijiang hwàr                    | that painting   |
|     | nǐ nèijiang hwàr                 | that painting of yours  |

	nǐ hwàde nèijang hwàr	the painting that you painted (you-paintedde the- painting)
1.7	nèi lyǎngkwai chyán  nǐ gěi wǒ de nèi lyǎngkwai chyán	those two dollars  the two dollars that you gave me (you-gave-mede the-two dollars)
1.8	nèisye shr̄ (ching)  nǐ wèn wǒ de nèisye shr̄	those affairs (or matters)  the several things you asked me about (you- ask-mede the-several- matters)

## 2. Reduplicated Verbs

Verbs are sometimes reduplicated in Chinese. This often gives a casual touch to the sense. Sometimes yi (one, a) is inserted between the two verbs.

Syèsye nin.

Thank you

Chǐng nǐ gēn tā shwōshwo.

Please talk it over with  
him.

Wǒmen chyù chōuchou  
yān hāu buhāu?

How about going to have  
a smoke?

Wǒ yào chyù mǎimai dūngsyi.

I want to go shopping.

Wǒ tàitai yào sywéyisywé  
kǎichō.

My wife wants to learn  
driving.

Translate the following:

- 1) I want to take a look at your book.
- 2) I want to ask Mr. Wang about this matter.
- 3) How about going out and take a little walk?

- 4) Please think it over.
- 5) Please have a smoke and have some tea.

### 3. Pronouns Before Positional Nouns .

Expressions such as "with us here", "at his place", "here to me", etc., are formed by placing pronouns before the positional words jēr and nēr (see Lessons 12, note 3).

Chǐng nǐ dào wǒ jēr  
lái hǎu bùhǎu?

How about coming to my  
place?

Chǐng nǐ dào Lǐ Syānsheng  
nēr chū wènwen.

Please go to Mr. Li and  
ask him.

Nèige dūngsī bùdzài wǒ  
jēr.

That thing is not (with  
me) here.

Dào tā nēr chū kànyikàn.

Let's go over to his  
place and have a look.

Translate the following:

- 1) Do you want to go to his place to read newspapers?
- 2) There is an officer here with me.
- 3) The books there at his place are very interesting.
- 4) The shoes there at his place are very cheap.
- 5) May I go over to your place to sit for a while?

1. A: 你 - dīng lái chī  
Jūnggwo fàn ma? Are you coming for a  
Chinese meal for sure?
- B: 我 bù - dīng. I am not sure.
- A: 他 - dīng lái chī  
Jūnggwo fàn ma? Is he coming for a  
Chinese meal for sure?
- B: 他也 bù - dīng. He isn't sure either.
- A: Lǐ Syáujye - dīng ywányi  
lái dzwò Jūnggwo fàn  
ma? Is Miss Lǐ certainly  
willing to come to  
cook a Chinese meal?
- B: 他也 bù - dīng. She isn't sure either.
2. A: 你 de nyŭer kéyi  
jānchilai ma? Can your daughter stand  
up?
- B: 我 de nyŭer bùkēyi  
jānchilai. No, my daughter can't  
stand up.
- A: 他 búhwèi jānchilai ma? Is she unable to stand  
up?
- B: Búhwèi, tài syǎu. No, she isn't. She is  
too small.
- A: 他 kéyi dzwòsya ma? Can she sit down?

B: Kéyi.

Yes, she can.

3. A: Nèi 三個人, shéi  
dzwèi gāu?

Who is the tallest of  
those three?

B: Nèi 三個人, 他  
dzwèi gāu.

He is the tallest of  
those three.

A: Nèi 三個人 shéi  
dzwèi 有 chyán?

Who is the richest of  
those three?

B: Wūdzlǐde nài 個人  
dzwèi 有 chyán.

That man in the room is  
the richest.

4. A: 他 nài 三個 érdz dōu  
dàu nín jèr lái ma?

Are his three sons  
coming to your place?

B: 他們 dōu yāu dàu 我  
jèr lái.

All of them are coming  
to my place.

A: 他 nài 三個 érdz  
shéi dzwèi hǎukan?

Who is the most hand-  
some among his three  
sons?

B: 他們 Lǐbai 天 lái.  
你 kànkān shéi dzwèi  
hǎukan.

They are coming Sunday.  
Take a look and (find  
out) who is the most  
handsome.



5. A: 你 syǎng hē shémma?

What do you want to  
drink?

B: Chá, jyǒu, shwěi, 我 dōu  
syǎng hē.

I want to drink tea,  
wine and water.

A: 你 dzwèi syǎng hē shémma?

What do you want to  
drink the most?

B: 我 dzwèi syǎng hējyǒu.

I want to drink wine the  
most.

A: Dzài shémma dìfang  
hējyǒu?

Where do you want to  
drink?

B: Dzài 我 jèr hējyǒu.

I want to drink at my  
place.

6. A: 你 wèishémma bùchǎ  
Jūnggwo fàn?

Why don't you eat  
Chinese food?

B: Yīnwèi 我 tàitai  
bùchǎ, swóyī 我也  
bùchǎ.

Because my wife doesn't  
eat it; therefore, I  
don't eat it either.

A: Wèishémma 你 búdào  
Jyòujīnshān chyu?

Why don't you go to San  
Francisco?

B: Yīnwèi 我 tàitai  
búchyù, swóyī 我也  
búchyù.

Because my wife doesn't  
go there; therefore, I  
don't go there either.

L. 18

A: Wèishénma 你 bù mǎi,  
nèi syā jǎng hwàr?

Why don't you buy those  
paintings?

B: Yīnwéi 我 没 chǎn,  
swóyí 我 bù mǎi.

I don't buy them because  
I don't have any money.

A: Wèishénma 你 bú dzwò  
mǎi mǎi?

Why don't you go into  
business?

B: Yīnwéi 我 没 chǎn,  
swóyí 我 bù néng  
dzwò mǎi mǎi.

I can't go into busi-  
ness because I don't  
have any money.

V. READINGA. Characters (Nos. 24-31)

24.	上	shàng	V: ascend, get onto	樓上	- upstairs
			SP: last	上尉	- Captain (military)
			PW: on top (of)	上校	- Colonel (military)
				上	- above
				上禮拜	- last week
				晚	- evening
25.	下	xià	V: descend, go down from	下士	- corporal
			SP: next	下月	- next month
			PW: below, under- neath	下	- below, bottom
				鄉下	- country-- rural
				樓下	- downstairs
26.	兩	liǎng	NU: couple, two	兩個禮拜	- two weeks
				兩三天	- two or three days
				兩個人	- two persons
				兩塊錢	- two dollars
27.	中	zhōng	BF: middle	中	- China
				中校	- Lt. Colonel (military)
				中飯	- lunch--noon meal

L. 18.

- |            |                           |         |                              |
|------------|---------------------------|---------|------------------------------|
| 28. 的 de   | P: (subordinate particle) | 他的 érdz | - his, son /                 |
|            |                           | 大的      | - big one                    |
|            |                           | 小的      | - small one                  |
| 29. 不 bù   | A: (negative prefix)      | 不 hwèi  | - cannot                     |
|            |                           | 不大      | - not big                    |
|            |                           | 不是      | - it is not so               |
|            |                           | 不 hǎu   | - not good, bad              |
|            |                           | 不 -ding | - uncertain, not necessarily |
| 30. 小 syǎu | SV: be small, little      | 小 háidz | - child                      |
|            |                           | 小 jye   | - Miss, polite for daughter  |
| 31. 在 dzài | V: be at, in or on        | 在 nǎr?  | - at what place?             |
|            | CV: at, in, or on         | 在 jyā   | - at home                    |

B. Sentences

1. 我們兩個人 = gùng 有六 wànkwaì chyán.
2. 他的 érdz 大, 你的 érdz 小.
3. 你天天在 lóu 上 nyàn Yingwén ma?
4. 你的 中 gwo hwà, jèi 兩個月 hǎu hǎu.
5. 他們在 syāng 下 nyàn shū.
6. 上 syàu 在他 nèr, 上 wèi 也在他 nèr. kě 是

下 shǔ 不在他 nèr.

7. Jwōdz 上 tou 有 shū, 下 tou 也 - ding 有 shū.

8. 他有兩個小 nyūháidz, 沒 nán 的.

9. 我們的 hēibǎn hěn hǎu, 不大也不小.

10. 你們 dōu 不 huì cháng 中 gwo gēr.

11. 我們兩個人 dōu ywányi hē, 你 mǎi 的 中 gwo jyōu.

12. 他在 nǎr?

13. 他在我 jèr.

14. Jyāu hwáhwār 的 nēi 個人 shwō: 你們兩個人  
dzwò 下.

15. 你 syāng - syāng nēi 五個 dz 是 shémma yīsz.

16. Yīdz 下 tou 有兩個小 háidz. Yīdz 上 tou 沒有.

17. Aī kāiche 的 nēi 八個人 dōu 不是 中 gwo 人.

### C. Story

我有一個 中 gwo péngyou. 他是二 wèi 中 syāu.

他有兩個小 háidz. 大的是 nánháidz, 小的是

nyūháidz. Nánháidz 在 syāng 下, nyūháidz 天天在我們

L. 18

Jyā lóu 上 nyàn Yingwén 有 一 天, 我 wèn nǐwèi 中 gwo 中 syàu:

「你 們 小 jyǎ 的 Yingwen jēn hǎu 你 們 的 大 érdz wèishemma

不 也 nyàn 一 dyar Yingwèn?」 他 shwō: 「你 dzwò 下 我 gēn

你 shwō. 我 也 yàu 他 nyàn Yingwen, kǎ 是 他 shwō Yingwen

沒 yisz, 他 也 不 一 dīng yàu gēn Yingwo 人 dzwòshr.

他 syàn 在 jyōu syihwan 在 syāng 下 dzwò mǎimai. 九 月

十 七, 八 hǎu 他 dàu jèr lái 你 gēn 他 shwō 一 shwo

hǎu. 不 hǎu?」

VI. WRITING

## A. Writing (Characters 16-20)

是 我 你 他 們

## B. Basic Strokes in the Chinese Character Writing

1. / tyǎu (upward stroke from left to right) as in:

我

## C. Radicals

1. 日 (sun, 72) as in:

是

2. 戈 (spear, 62) as in:

我

3. 亻 (man, 9) (see Lesson 17) as in: 你, 他, 們

LESSON 19

I. Structural Dialogue

1. A: Jāng Bānjǎng lái le ma? Has Squad Leader Jāng come?

B: Jāng Bānjǎng lái le. Squad Leader Jāng has come.

A: Lǐ Páijǎng lái le ma? Has Platoon Leader Lǐ come?

B: Lǐ Páijǎng 也 lái le. Platoon Leader Lǐ has come, too.

A: Jyūngwān dōu lái le ma? Have all the officers come?

B: Jyūngwān dōu lái le. All the officers have come.

2. A: Jāng Bānjǎng chū le 没有? Has Squad Leader Jāng gone?

B: Jāng Bānjǎng chū le. Squad Leader Jāng has gone.

A: 他 tāitai 没 chū le ma? Hasn't his wife gone?

B: 他 tāitai 没 chū le. His wife hasn't gone.



L. 19

A: 他 fùmǔ chūle.  
没 chū?

Have his parents gone?

B: 他 fùmǔ 也 没 chū.

His parents haven't  
gone either.

3. A: Nèige màudz Lǐ Shàuwèi  
mǎile 没有?

Did Second Lieutenant  
Lǐ buy that hat?

B: 他 mǎile.

He bought it.

A: Nèishwāng syé Lǐ  
Shàuwèi mǎile  
没有?

Did Second Lieutenant  
Lǐ buy that pair  
of shoes?

B: 他 没 mǎi, yīnwei  
tài gwèi.

He didn't buy, because  
they are too expensive.

A: Nèiběn shū 他  
mǎile 没有?

Did he buy that book?

B: 他 没 mǎi, yīnwei tài  
nán.

He didn't, because the  
book is too difficult.

4. A: Lǐbàit 天 你 syědzle  
没有?

Did you write on Sunday?

B: Lǐbàit 天 wǒ 没 syědz.

I didn't write on  
Sunday.

A: Lǐbài 天 你 dzwò  
shémale?

What did you do on  
Sunday?

B: Lǐbài 天 我  
hwàhwàrle.

I painted on Sunday.

A: 你 一 gùng hwàle.  
jǐjāng hwàr?

How many paintings did  
you make altogether?

B: 我 jyòu hwàle  
一 jāng hwàr.

I made only one painting.

5. A: Lǐbài 天 他 dàu 你  
nèr chyùle 沒有?

Did he go to your place  
on Sunday?

B: Lǐbài 天 他 dàu 我  
nèr chyùle.

Yes, he came to my place  
on Sunday.

A: 他 Lǐbài 五 dàu 你 jèr  
láiile 沒有?

Did he come to your place  
on Friday?

B: 他 Lǐbài 五 沒 dàu 我  
jèr lái.

He didn't come to my  
place on Friday.

A: Lǐbài 四 Wáng 小 jye  
dàu sywésyàu chyùle  
沒有?

Did Miss Wang go to  
school on Thursday?

B: 他 沒 dàu sywésyàu  
chyù.

She didn't go to school.

A: Libái 王 Lǐ 上 shǒu  
dào Jyòujīnshān  
chyùe ma?

Did SFC Lǐ go to San  
Francisco on Wednes-  
day?

B: Lǐ 上 shǒu 没 dàu  
Jyòujīnshān chyù.

SFC Lǐ didn't go to San  
Francisco.

A: Libái 六 你 dàu  
Jyòujīnshān chyùe  
没有?

Did you go to San Fran-  
cisco on Saturday?

B: 我 没 chyù.

I didn't go.

A: Libái 一 mǎi mǎudz  
的 Lǐ Syānsheng dàu  
Jyòujīnshān chyùe  
没 chyù?

Did the Mr. Lǐ who sells  
hats go to San Fran-  
cisco on Monday?

B: Lǐ Syānsheng 没 chyù.

Mr. Lǐ didn't go.

H: Basic Dialogue

Jāng: Lǐ Syānsheng, nín dzǎu.

Good morning, Mr. Lǐ.

Lǐ: Nín dzǎu.

Good morning.

Jāng: Dzwó 天 Bái 上 wèi 的  
nyüer láiile 没有?

Did Captain Bái's  
daughter come yester-  
day?

Lǐ: 没 lái. 我不 jǐdau 他  
wèishémma 没 lái.

No, she didn't, and I  
don't know why she  
didn't come.

Jāng: Jīn 天 他 lái 不 lái?

Is she coming today?

Lǐ: 我 syāng, yàu 是 他  
jīn 天 dzǎu 上  
不 lái, wǒ wǎn 上  
chyu.

If she doesn't come this  
morning, I think I  
will go in the evening.

Jāng: Nín wǎn 上 dàu nǎ  
chyu?

Where are you going this  
evening?

Lǐ: Dàu Bái 上 wèi  
nèr chyu.

To Captain Bái's place.

Jāng: Hěn hǎu. Dzǎufàn  
nín chǐle 没 chǐ?

That's very good. Have  
you had your break-  
fast?

Lǐ: 我 chǐle. Nín chǐle  
没有?

Yes, I have. Have you?

Jāng: 我也 chǐle.

Yes, I have too.

Lǐ: Nín kàn, nèiwei xiǎo jye  
是不是 Bái  
小 jye?

Look, is that lady Miss  
Bái?

Jāng: 是 Bái xiǎo jye. 他  
lái sywé Yīngwén.  
Nǐ yě jyāu tā  
Jūngwén ma?

Yes, it is Miss Bái.

She is coming to study  
English. Do you also  
teach her Chinese?

Lǐ: 不. Jyòu jyāu 他  
Yīngwén.

No. I just teach her  
English.

Bái: Lǐ Syānsheng, nín dzāu.

Good morning, Mr. Lǐ.

Lǐ: Dzāu. 你 dzwó 天  
wèishémma 没 lái?

Morning. Why didn't you  
come yesterday?

Bái: Yīnwèi Jāu Páijǎng, dāu  
我們 jyā lái.

Because Platoon Leader  
Jāu came to our house.

Lǐ: Nèi 个 Jāu Páijǎng?

Which Platoon Leader Jāu?

Bái: Měigwo Lùjyūn 的 Jāu  
Páijǎng. 我 fùchīn  
是他的 hǎu péngyǔ.

The Platoon Leader Jāu  
of the American Army.  
My father is a good  
friend of his.

Lǐ: Jiù Páijǎng tsúng  
shémma dìfang lái?

Where does Platoon  
Leader Jiù come from?

Bái: Tsúng chéng lítòu lái.

He comes from the city.

Lǐ: 我 kényi kànkàn Jiù  
Páijǎng ma?

May I see Platoon  
Leader Jiù?

Bái: 他 yǐjīng dǒule.

He has left already.

Lǐ: 你 fùchǎn zài jiā ma?

Is your father at home?

Bái: 不在 jiā. 他 gēn  
Jiù Páijǎng - kwàr  
dào Jyǒujīnshān  
chūle.

No, he isn't. He went  
with Platoon Leader  
Jiù to San Francisco.

Lǐ: Jīn tiān wǎn shàng tāmen  
huí lái ma?

Will they be back this  
evening?

Bái: 不 huí lái. 他們  
jīn tiān wǎn shàng zài  
Jyǒujīnshān chī wǎnfàn.

No, they won't be back.  
They will have supper  
this evening in San  
Francisco.

Lǐ: 他們 míng tiān huí lái  
ma?

Will they be back tomor-  
row?

Bái: 我 xiǎng tāmen míng tiān  
yào huí lái chī  
zhōng fàn.

I think they will be  
back tomorrow for  
lunch.

Lǐ: Yīngwén shū, 你 mǎile  
ma?

Did you buy the English  
book?

Bái: Mǎile.

Yes, I did.

Lǐ: Hǎo. 我 jyāu 你  
nyàn Yīngwén.

Fine. Let me teach you  
English.

Vocabulary

L. 19

48. dzǎufàn 早飯 N: breakfast (early meal)
49. dzǒu 走 V: walk; go, leave
50. dzwótyān 昨天 MA/N: yesterday
51. hwéilai 回來 V: come back, return here
52. jūngfàn 中飯 N: lunch (middle meal)
53. -le 了 P: (verb and sentence suffix, indicating completion of action)
54. lùjyūn 陸軍 N: army
55. méi-, méi(you) 沒 沒有 P: (verb prefix, negating completion of action)
56. míngtyān 明天 MA/N: tomorrow
57. pái 排 N: platoon (army unit)
58. páijǎng 排長 N: platoon leader
59. wǎnfàn 晚飯 N: supper, dinner (late meal)
60. yàushr 要是 MA: if, in case
61. yǐjīng 已經 A: already
62. Jūngwén 中文 N: Chinese (language)
- 62.1 Déwén 德文 N: German (language)
- 62.2 Fǎwén 法文 N: French (language)



III. Grammar Analysis1. Completed Action With -le

The particle -le, either as a suffix to a verb, or as a sentence final, indicates the completion of the action of the verb or the entire predicate.

Jāng Syānsheng lái le.

Mr. Jāng came.

Wǒ yǐjīng chāng tāmen le.

I have already invited them.

Tā gěi wǒ chǎn le.

He gave me money.

In the case of verbs with simple objects, -le is used as a sentence final. One often finds another -le suffixed to the main verb.

Nǐn chī le fàn le ma?

Have you eaten?

Wǒ gěi le tā nēige biǎo le.

I've given him that watch.

2. Negation of Completed Action With mei

The negative particle méi-(or méiyǒu) is used as a prefix to the verb for the negative form of the verb of completed action or the negative form of the entire predicate.

Tā méilái.

He didn't come.

Wǒmen dōu méichū.

None of us went.

Wǒmen méi kàn bào.

We didn't read the newspaper.

## 3. Questions and Completed Action

Note the following forms for the questions of completed action.

Tā lái le ma?	Did (or has) he come?
Tā lái méilái?	Did (or has) he come?
Tā lái méiyǒu?	Did (or has) he come?
Tā méilái ma?	Didn't (or hasn't) he come?
Nǐn chī (le) fàn le ma?	Have you eaten?
Nǐn chī (le) fàn le meiyǒu?	Have you eaten?
Nǐn méichī fàn ma?	Didn't you eat?

With transposed objects, -le is attached to the verb only:

Jīntiān de bào, nǐn kàn le ma?	Have you read today's newspaper?
Jīntiān de bào, nǐn kàn le meikàn?	Have you read today's newspaper?
Jīntiān de bào, nǐn kàn le meiyǒu?	Have you read today's newspaper?
Jīntiān de bào, nǐn méikàn ma?	Didn't you read today's newspaper?

## 4. Co-verbs in Completed Action

When co-verbs are used to modify a verb in completed action, -le is attached to the verb in positive sense, and méi- precedes the co-verb in negative sense.

Tā dǎo lóushang chū le ma? Did he go upstairs?

Tā dāu meidau  
sywēsyaui lái?

Did he come to school?

Ni méigēn tā  
shwōhwā ma?

Didn't you talk with  
him?

Translate the following:

- 1) He gave me a book, and I thanked him.
- 2) In the morning we had our breakfast and went shopping.
- 3) I bought a shirt and a necktie, and my wife bought a hat.
- 4) Did you write your name?
- 5) Yesterday I went to the bus station and met my friend.
- 6) Did you have your supper? If you didn't, please come here.
- 7) I have had my supper. May I come tomorrow?
- 8) I went to San Francisco yesterday and came back this morning.
- 9) I bought a pair of shoes yesterday. Do you like them?
- 10) I went to the airport, but the airplane had left.

1. A: Jīn 天 Lǐbàijī?

What day of the week is today?

B: Jīn 天 Lǐbài 三.

Today is Wednesday.

A: Dzwó 天 Lǐbàijī?

What day of the week was yesterday?

B: Dzwó 天 Lǐbài 二.

Yesterday was Tuesday.

A: Míng 天 Lǐbàijī?

What day of the week is tomorrow?

B: Míng 天 Lǐbài 四.

Tomorrow will be Thursday.

A: Jīn 天 jīhàu?

What day of the month is today?

B: Jīn 天 十七 hàu.

Today is the 17th.

A: Dzwó 天 jīhàu?

What day of the month was yesterday?

B: Dzwó 天 十六 hàu.

Yesterday was the 16th.

A: Míng 天 jīhàu?

What day of the month will tomorrow be?

B: Míng 天 十八 hàu.

Tomorrow will be the 18th.

2. A: 他 dzwó 天 hwéilaile  
ma?

B: Dzwó 天 他 hwéilaile.

A: Jàu Páijǎng yàu  
míng 天 dzǒu ma?

B: Jàu Páijǎng míng 天  
— dǐng dzǒu.

A: Bái 小 jye jīn 天 yàu  
lái sywé Yīngwén ma?

B: Jīn 天 他 — dǐng  
yàu lái sywé Yīngwén.

3. A: Dzǎufàn nín chīle ma?

B: Dzǎufàn 我 chīle.

A: 中 fàn nín chīle  
没 有 吃 吗?

B: 中 fàn 我 chīle.

A: Wǎnfàn nín chīle 没 吃 吗?

B: Wǎnfàn 我 也 chīle.

Did he get back yesterday?

Yes, he got back yesterday.

Is Platoon Leader Jàu  
leaving tomorrow?

Platoon Leader Jàu cer-  
tainly will leave  
tomorrow.

Is Miss Bái coming to  
study English today?

She certainly will come  
to study English today.

Have you had your break-  
fast?

I have had my breakfast.

Have you had your lunch?

I have had my lunch.

Have you had your supper?

I have also had my supper.

4. A: Dégwó 有 lùjyūn ma?

Is there an army in  
Germany?

B: 他們有 lùjyūn.

Yes, there is.

A: Fàgwó 沒有 lùjyūn ma?

Isn't there an army in  
France?

B: Fàgwó 也有 lùjyūn.

Yes, there is an army in  
France, too.

A: Rběn 有 lùjyūn 沒有?

Is there an army in  
Japan?

B: Rběn 也有 lùjyūn.

Yes, there is an army in  
Japan, too.

A: 中 gwó 有 沒有  
lùjyūn?

Is there an army in  
China?

B: 中 gwó 也有 lùjyūn.

Yes, there is an army in  
China, too.

A: Něigwó 的 lùjyūn, dzwèi  
hǎu?

Which country has the  
best army?

B: Měigwo 的 lùjyūn dzwèi  
hǎu, kè 是 中 gwó 的  
也 hěn hǎu.

America has the best  
army, but the Chinese  
army is very good too.

A: 不是 Dégwó 的 lùjyūn  
dzwèi hǎu ma?

Isn't the German army  
the best?

B: Dégwó 的 lùjyūn hěn  
hǎu, kè 是 不是 dzwèi  
hǎu

The German army is very  
good, but not the best.

5. A: 你們 nèibān 有  
dwōshau 人?

How many people are  
there in your squad?

B: 我們 nèibān 有  
九個人。

There are nine people  
in our squad.

A: 你們 nèipái 有  
dwōshau 人?

How many people are  
there in your platoon?

B: 我們 nèipái 有  
四十個人。

There are forty people  
in our platoon.

A: 你們 nèilyán 有  
dwōshau 人?

How many people are  
there in your company?

B: 我們 nèilyán 有  
一 bǎi 六十個人。

There are a hundred and  
sixty people in our  
company.

6. A: Lǐ Páijǎng nèipái 在  
shémma dìfang?

Where is Platoon Leader  
Lǐ's platoon?

B: 在 Jyòujīnshān.

It is in San Francisco.

A: Jāu Páijāng nèipái  
在 shémma dífang?

Where is Platoon Leader  
Jāu's platoon?

B: 在 Jyòujinshān chéng  
lītou.

In the city of San  
Francisco.

A: Jāng Shìgwānjāng nèibān  
在 shémma dífang?

Where is Master Sergeant  
Jāng's squad?

B: 他們 nèibān 在  
sywésyàu lītou.

His squad is at school.

A: Wáng Shāuwèi 他們  
nèipái 在 shémma  
dífang?

Where is Second Lieuten-  
ant Wáng's platoon?

B: Wáng Shāuswèi 他們  
nèipái 在 sywésyàu  
wàitou.

Second Lieutenant Wáng's  
platoon is outside the  
school.

7. A: Nǐ míng 天 wǎn 上  
chǐng 我們 chī  
wǎnfàn ma?

Will you invite us for  
dinner tomorrow  
evening?

B: 我 míng 天 wǎn 上  
chǐng 你們 chī  
wǎnfàn, chǐng 你 gēn  
你 nǚ péngyou 一 kwà  
lái.

Yes, I will invite you for  
dinner tomorrow even-  
ing, please come with  
your girl friend.





4. 19

A: 你 chīngle Jāng Páijāng  
le ma?

Did you invite Platoon  
Leader Jāng?

B: 我 chīngle Jāng Páijāng  
le.

I have invited Platoon  
Leader Jāng.

A: 你 gēn 你 tàitai  
shwōle ma?

Have you told your  
wife?

B: 我 yǐjīng gēn 他  
shwōle.

I have already told her.

A: Dūngsī dōu mǎile ma?

Have you bought every-  
thing yet?

B: Dūngsī dōu mǎile.

(We) have bought every-  
thing.

V. READINGA. Characters (Nos. 32-39)

32. 了 le P: (verbal and sentence suffix) chī 了 - have eaten  
lái 了 - have come
33. 王 wáng N: (a surname); king 王先生 - Mr. Wáng  
王上 syàu - Colonel Wáng  
王小 jye - Miss Wáng
34. 先 syān A: first 先生 - Mr.; sir; teacher; polite for husband  
你:先 dzǒu - you go first
35. 生 shēng BF: scholar V: born sywé 生 - student
36. 日 rì BF: sun, day 日本 - Japan
37. 本 běn BF: original M: volume (books) 日本 - Japan  
十本 shū, - ten books
38. 火 huǒ N: fire 火車 - train  
火車站 jàn - railway station
39. 車 chē N: vehicle | chī 車 - automobile  
chī 車 jàn - bus stop or station

B. Sentences

1. 王先生 是 日本人.

2. 他 nèr 沒有火車, kě 是他有 chī 車.

3. 他 ài kàn 中 gwo shū, 也 ài kàn 日本 shū.

4. 你有 jī 個 日本 péngyou?

5. 我有兩個. 他們 dzwó 天 dzǒu 了.

6. (Dzǎufàn . 你 chī 了沒 chī?

7. 我 chī 了, kě 是他沒 chī.

8. 大人 yàu mǎi 日本 chī 車, xiǎo háidz yàu mǎi  
日本 小火車.

9. 五月我沒 dàu 日本 chyù.

10. 他們有九本 中 gwo shū.

11. 我有八 kwài chyán.

12. 他們有六七本 日本 shū ma?

13. yàu 是他們有六七本. 他們 dīng hwèi shwō  
日本 hwà.

14. Nèiwei 中 gwo 先生在 nǎr, chī 中 fàn?

15. Dzǎu 上的 bàu, wǎn 上的 bàu, 我 dōu 沒 kàn; yīn -

wèi 我 dōu 沒有。

16. 王 先生 在 shénma dìfang nyànshū?
17. 王 先生 在 日本 nyànshū.
18. 火車 上 有 兩 個 大 jūng.
19. Jwōdz 下 tou 有 兩 個 小 火 車.
20. 你 kàn 的 nèisye shū 是 shéi 的?
21. Dōu 是 王 先生 的, 他 dōu yǐjīng kàn 了.
22. 王 先生 mǎi 了 十 本 日本 shū; kě 是 他 沒 mǎi 日本 bǐ.

C. Story

王 先生 的 péngyou, Jāng 先生, tsung 日本 dān  
 Měigwo lái 了. 王 先生 tsung syāng 下 dzwò 火車  
 dàu Jyòujīnshān chvì kàn 他. 王 tàitai yīnwèi háidz  
 tài 小 沒 chyù 王 先生 cnǐng Jāng 先生 在 一 個 中 gwo  
 fāngwǎn chr 中 fàn. Jāng 先生 gōi 了 王 先生 三 四 本  
日本 shū. Jāng 先生 shwō: 日本 hēn 有 yisz. Yàu 是  
 你 有 chyán, 你 一 dīng yàu dàu 日本 chyù kankan.

L. 19

Jy5 上 dōu 是 hāukàn 的 小 jye. 王 先生 shwō:  
「我有太太, 也有兩個小 háidz, 我不 néng chyù.」

VI. WRITING

## A. Writing (Characters 21-25)

沒 也 上 下 有

## B. Radicals

1. 氵 (water, 85) as in: 沒
2. 乚 (bent, 5) as in: 也
3. 一 (one, 1) as in: 上, 下
4. 月 (moon, 74) (see Lesson 17) as in: 有

LESSON 20

I. Structural Dialogue

1. A: Bái 上 syàu hwéilai 了 ma? Has Colonel Bái returned?
- B: Háì 沒 hwéilai ne. No, he hasn't.
- A: Jàu Páijǎng hwéilai 了 ma? Has Platoon Leader Jàu returned?
- B: 沒 hwéilai ne. No, he hasn't.
- A: Bái 小 jye lái 了 ma? Has Miss Bái come?
- B: 沒 lái ne. No, she hasn't come yet.
- A: 你們 chǐfàn 了 ma? Have you eaten?
- B: Háì 沒 chǐ ne. No, we haven't.
- A: Dzwòfàn 的 dzwòfàn 了 ma? Has the cook prepared the food?
- B: 沒 dzwò ne. No, he hasn't.
2. A: 你 nyűer dàu nǎr chyù 了 ? Where did your daughter go?
- B: 我 nyűer dàu lóu 上 chyù 了 . My daughter went upstairs.

A: 他 kánbau chyù 了 ma?

Did she go to read the newspapers?

B: 他 yíjīng kàr 了 bàu 了 ,  
他 nyànshū chyù 了 .

She has already read the newspapers; she went up to study.

A: 他 jīn 天 dzǎu 上  
沒 nyànshū ma?

Didn't she study this morning?

B: Jīn 天 dzǎu 上 他  
dzwò dzǎufàn 了 ,  
swöyi 沒 nyànshū.

She prepared breakfast this morning, so she didn't study.

3. A: 你 dau 日本 chyù dzwò  
shémma chyù 了 ?

Why did you go to Japan?

B: 我 dau 日本 chyù  
nyànshū chyù 了 .

I went to Japan to study.

A: 他 dau Dégwo dzwò  
shémma chyù 了 ?

Why did he go to Germany?

B: 他 dau Dégwo mǎi  
chìchē chyù 了 .

He went to Germany to buy cars.

A: Jāng Shāusyàu dau  
Měigwo lai dzwò  
shémma lái 了 ?

Why has Major Jāng come to America?





- B: 他 dau Měigwo lai nyànshū  
lái 了。  
He has come to America  
to study.
- A: Bái 小 jye dau 你  
nèr chyu dzwò shémma  
chyù 了?  
Why did Miss Bái go to  
your place?
- B: 他 lái nyàn Yingwén  
lái 了。  
She came to study  
English.
- A: 你 dau Jyòujīnshān chyu  
dzwò shémma chyù 了?  
Why did you go to San  
Francisco?
- B: 我 chyu chī wǎnfàn  
chyù 了。  
I went to have supper.
4. A: Nin 的 shū 是 在  
nǎr mǎi 的?  
Where did you buy your  
book?
- B: 我的 shū 是 在  
Fàgwó mǎi 的。  
I bought my book in  
France.
- A: 他的 chènshān 是  
在 nǎr mǎi 的?  
Where did he buy his  
shirt?
- B: 是 在 chéng lítòu  
mǎi 的。  
He bought his shirt in  
the city.
- A: Wǎnfàn 你們 是 在  
nǎr chī 的?  
Where did you have your  
supper?

B: 在 syāng 下 chī 的。

We ate in the country.

A: Nín fùmǔ 是 tsúng nǎr lái 的?

Where did your parents come from?

B: 他們 是 tsúng Jūnggwō lái 的。

They came from China.

5. A: 你 是! dzwò shénma chō dào jèr lái 的?

How did you come here?

B: 我 是 dzwò hwōchē lái 的。

I came by train.

A: Nín fùchín 是 dzwò shénma chō lái 的?

How did your father come?

B: 他 是 dzwò chīchē lái 的。

He came by automobile.

A: Nín mǔchín 是 dzwò shénma chō lái 的?

How did your mother come here?

B: 他 也 是 dzwò chīchē lái 的。

She also came by automobile.

A: Nín tàitài 是 dzwò shénma chō lái 的?

How did your wife come here?

B: 他 沒 dzwò chīchē, 也 沒 dzwò hwōchē, 是 dzwò fēijī lái 的。

She didn't come by automobile nor by train. She came by airplane.

6. A: Jàu Páijǎng 是 tsúng  
shémma dífang dau,

中 gwo chyù 的?

From where did Platoon  
Leader Jàu go to  
China?

B: 他是 tsúng 日本 dau  
中 gwo chyù 的.

He went to China from  
Japan.

A: 他 dau 中 gwo dzwò  
shémma chyù 了.

Why did he go to China?

B: 他 dau 中 gwo dzwòshr  
chyù 了.

He went to China to  
work.

7. A: 你是 dau jèr lái  
dzwò shémma lái 的?

Why have you come here?

B: 我是 dau jèr nyànshū  
lái 的.

I came here to study.

A: 你是 dau chéng lítour  
chyù dzwò shémma chyù 的?

Why did you go to the  
city?

B: 我是 mǎi dūngsyi  
chyù 的.

I went shopping.

A: 你 tsúng nǎr chyù 的?

From where did you go?

B: Tsúng 我 jyā chyù 的.

I went from my home.

A: Dzwò shémma chē chyù 的?

How did you go?

B: Dzwò chīchē chyù 的.

I went by car.

II. Basic Dialogue

Lǐ: Bái 小 Jye, 你在  
nǎr mǎi 的 Yīngwén shū?

Where did you buy your  
English book, Miss  
Bái?

Bái: 我是在 Jyòujīnshān  
mǎi 的。

I bought it in San  
Francisco.

Lǐ: Jīn 天 你 syǎng nyàn  
shénma?

What do you want to read  
today?

Bái: 我 syǎng nyàn jèi 個  
gùshǐ. Lǐ 先生,  
nǐn chī dzǎufàn 了 ma?

I wish to read this  
story. Have you had  
your breakfast, Mr. Lǐ?

Lǐ: Hái 沒 chī ne. Kě 是,  
nà 不 yào jīn. Jèi 個  
gùshǐ 你 kàn 了  
沒有?

No, I haven't, but that  
doesn't matter. Have  
you read this story?

Bái: Hái 沒 kàn ne.

No, I haven't.

Lǐ: 我 kěyǐ gěi 你 shwōshwō  
jèi 個 gùshǐ.

I can tell you this  
story.

Bái: Hǎu. 我 dzwèi ài tīng  
gùshǐ.

Fine. I like to listen  
to stories the most.

Lǐ: 有 一 個 hái dzǐ, 他  
syǐnhwǎn dāng bīng.

There is a boy who wants  
to be a soldier.

Bái: Wèishémma?

Why?

Lǐ: Yīnwèi bǎi rén dōu  
shuō dāng bīng hǎo,  
suǒyǐ tā yuányī  
dāng bīng.

He desires to become a  
soldier, because  
everyone says it is  
good to be a soldier.

Bái: Tā dǎo shémma dìfāng  
chū dāng bīng chū le?

Where did he go to be-  
come a soldier?

Lǐ: Tā dǎo Jyòujīnshān chū  
dāng bīng chū le.

He went to San Fran-  
cisco to become a  
soldier.

Bái: Shì tsung nǎr chū de?

From where did he go?

Lǐ: Tsung tā jiā chū de.

He went from his home.

Bái: Tā jiā shémma míngzì?

What was his name?

Lǐ: Wǒ bù jīdào. Nà  
bù yào jīn.

I don't know. However,  
that doesn't matter.

Bái: Wǒ hái bù dǒng tā  
wèishémma suǒyǐ dāng  
bīng.

I still don't understand  
why he wants to be a  
soldier.

Lǐ: Tā de gēge dōu shì  
jūngwān, suǒyǐ tā yě  
suǒyǐ dāng bīng.

All his brothers are  
officers, therefore he  
likes to be a soldier,  
too.

Bái: 有 jǐ 個 gēge? Dōu  
在 lùjyūn ma?

How many brothers does  
he have? Are they all  
in the Army?

Lǐ: 一 gòng 有三個  
gēge. 兩個  
在 lùjyūn, 一個  
在 hǎijyūn.

He has three elder brothers  
altogether. Two are in  
the Army and one is in  
the Navy.

Bái: 在 lùjyūn 的 nèi  
兩個 gēge dōu dzuò  
shénma?

What are the two brothers  
in the Army doing?

Lǐ: 他大 gē 是 yíngjǎng,  
他二 gē 是 liánjǎng.

His eldest brother is a  
battalion commander and  
his second brother is a  
company commander.

Bái: 他們 dōu 在  
shénma dìfang?

Where are they?

Lǐ: 他大 gē nàiyíng  
在 Jyòujīnshān  
chéng lítou, 他二 gē  
nèilyán. 在 Jyòujīnshān  
chéng wàitou.

His eldest brother's  
battalion is in San  
Francisco, and his  
second brother's  
company is outside San  
Francisco.

Bái: Jèi 個 gùshr jēn 有 yisz,  
nín hái 有 byé 的 .  
gùshr ma?

This story is really  
interesting. Do you  
have other stories?

Lǐ: 有 . Míng 天 我 gěi  
你 shwō: Syàn 在 我  
yào chyù chī dzǎufàn.

Yes, I do. I'll tell  
them to you tomorrow.  
I want to go and have  
my breakfast now.

Bái: Syèsyè. Syèsyè.

Thank you.

Lǐ: 沒 shémma.

Don't mention it.

Vocabulary

63. byéde 别的 N: other, another
64. byéren 別人 N: other people
65. dāng 當 V: to be a, become, (act as soldier, officer, teacher, etc.)
- 65.1 dāng bīng 當兵 VO: join the army
66. gěi 給 CV: for, to (for benefit of)
67. gùshì 故事 N: story
- 67.1 shuō gùshì 說故事 VO: tell a story
- 67.2 tīng gùshì 聽故事 VO: listen to a story
68. hái 還 A: still, yet, again
69. hǎijūn 海軍 N: navy
70. méi shénme 沒甚麼 IE: don't mention it! it's nothing at all
71. nà 那 SP: that (in general)
72. nà búyàujǐn 那不要緊 IE: that's nothing! never mind!
73. ne 呢 P: (sentence suffix, indicating suspense, negative statements)
74. yíng 營 N: battalion (army unit)
75. yíngjǎng 營長 N: battalion commander



III. Grammar Analysis1. Suspense with ne

In the case of negated statements with mei, or hai mei, ne is used as a sentence suffix to show that the action of the verb has not yet taken place but that it may take place in the near future.

Tā méidzou ne.	He hasn't left yet.
Wǒ méichīfàn ne.	I haven't eaten yet.
Tā tàitai hai méilai ne.	His wife has not come yet.
Nèige dǔ nǐ yǐjīng sywéle ma?	Have you learned that word yet?
(Hái) méi ne.	Not yet.

Translate the following:

- 1) Have you read this book?
- 2) I haven't read this book yet.
- 3) Have you had your supper yet?
- 4) I haven't had my supper yet.
- 5) Did you go to the railway station?
- 6) I haven't gone to the railway station yet.

## 2. Purpose and Completed Action

The purpose of coming or going is indicated by placing the verb lái or chū immediately before or after the purpose expression or in both places. (See Lesson 12, Note 2). When completed action is indicated, -le is attached to

lái or chyü at the end of the sentence only.

Tā dàu Jūnggwo chyü  
jyāushu.

He is going to China to  
teach.

Tā dàu Jūnggwo jyāushu  
chyü.

He is going to China to  
teach.

Tā dàu Jūnggwo chyü  
jyāushu chyü.

He is going to China to  
teach.

Tā dàu Jūnggwo jyāushu  
chyüle.

He went to China to  
teach.

Tā dàu Jūnggwo chyü  
jyāushu chyüle.

He went to China to  
teach.

Translate the following:

- 1) He went to San Francisco to become a soldier.
- 2) He went to tell the children stories.
- 3) I came to paint.
- 4) Miss Bái went to study English.
- 5) I went to town to buy shoes.

### 3. Strissing Place, Conveyance, and Purpose

Circumstances connected with the action of the main verb, such as the person who did the action, the place where the action occurred (with dzài), or started from (with tsung), or going to (with dàu), or what conveyance was used (with dzwò), or the purpose, are all stressed with the shr . . . . de clausal construction. The word shr in this construction is often omitted.

Nǐ shr tsung nǎr láiide?

Where did you come from?

Wǒ shr tsung wǒ jyā láiide.

I came from my home.

Nǐ shr dzēm̄ma chyùde? How did you go?

Wǒ shr dzwò chíchē chyùde! I went by car.

Nǐ shr chyù dzwò shēm̄ma chyùde? Why did you go?

Wǒ shr chyù nyànshū chyùde. I went to study.

Nǐ dzēm̄ma hwéilaide? How did you come back?

Wǒ dzwò chíchē hwéilaide. I came back by car.

Dzwòtyan nǐ shr chēde shēm̄ma fàn? What kind of food did you have yesterday?

Dzwòtyan wǒ shr chēde Jūnggwō fàn. I had Chinese food yesterday.

Nǐ shr dzài nǎr chēde fàn? Where did you eat?

Wǒ shr dzài chénglǐ chēde fàn. I ate downtown.

Nǐ shr gēn shéi yīkwàr chēde fàn? Whom did you eat with?

Wǒ shr gēn wǒ dìdì yīkwàr chēde fàn. I ate with my younger brother.

Translate the following with the emphasis on the underlined circumstances:

- 1) How did he go to San Francisco?
- 2) He went to San Francisco by bus.
- 3) From where did he go?
- 4) He went from his home.
- 5) Why did he go to San Francisco?
- 6) He went to San Francisco to join the Army.

IV. Recombination Dialogue

1. A: Nín syǎng yàù shémǎ?

What do you want?

B: 我 jyòu yàù 中 gwó bǐ.

I only want a Chinese pen.

A: Nín hái yàù bié de ma?

Do you want anything else?

B: Bié de, 我 dōu yǒu.

I have everything else.

A: Hǎo, 我 jyòu gěi nín  
中 gwó bǐ.

Fine. I'll only give  
you a Chinese pen.

B: Syèsyè nín.

Thank you.

A: 没 shémǎ.

Don't mention it.

B: Dzwó 天 nín gěi 我  
的 中 gwó bǐ, 我  
gěi 我 tàitài 了

I gave my wife the  
Chinese pen that you  
gave me yesterday.

A: 他 hěn syǐhwan nèi 个  
bǐ ma?

Does she like that  
pen?

B: Hěn syǐhwan. 他 syě 了  
hěndwō dǎ 了

Very much. She wrote  
many characters.

2. A: Yǐngjǎng, liánjǎng,  
shéi dà?

Which is higher, a bat-  
talion commander or a  
company commander?

B: Yíngjǎng 大, liánjǎng

小. Liánjǎng gěi

yíngjǎng dzwòshr.

The battalion commander is higher, and the company commander is lower. A company commander works for the battalion commander.

A: Liánjǎng, páijǎng, shéi

大?

Which is higher, a company commander or a platoon leader?

B: Liánjǎng 大, páijǎng

小. Páijǎng gěi

liánjǎng dzwòshr.

A company commander is higher, and a platoon leader is lower. A platoon leader works for the company commander.

3. A: Wèishénma 你 shwō

Měigwo Lùjyūn dzwèi

hǎu?

Why do you say that the American Army is the best?

B: Yīnwèi byé 人 dōu shwō

Měigwo Lùjyūn dzwèi

hǎu, swóyí. 我也 shwō

Měigwo Lùjyūn dzwèi hǎu.

I say that the American Army is the best because everybody says so.

A: Wèishénma 你 shwō Měigwo  
Hǎijūn dzwèi hǎu?

Why do you say that the  
American Navy is the  
best?

B: Yīnwèi byé 人 dōu shwō  
Měigwo Hǎijūn dzwèi  
hǎu.

Because everybody says  
the American Navy is  
the best.

A: 你 syíhwan dāng bīng  
ma?

Do you like to be a  
soldier?

B: 我 syíhwan dāng bīng.

I like to be a soldier.

A: 你 syàn 在 hái yào  
dāng bīng ma?

Now do you still want to  
join the army?

B: 我 syàn 在 hái yào  
dāng bīng.

Now I still want to join  
the army.

5. A: Shwō gùshr 的人 是  
shóu?

Who is telling a story?

B: 是 王 上 shr.

It is SFC Wáng.

A: Tīng gùshr 的人  
是 shéi?

Who is listening to the  
story?

B: 是他 érdz gēn nyüer.

They are his sons and  
daughters.

A: 你 hwèi shwō shémma  
gùshr?

What stories can you  
tell?

B: 我 hwèi shwō Měigwō  
gùshr.

I can tell American  
stories.

A: 你 syihwan tīng  
shémma gùshr?

What stories do you like  
to listen to?

B: 我 syihwan tīng  
有 yīsz 的 gùshr.

I like to listen to  
interesting stories.

A: Chīng 你 gěi 我  
shwō 一個 gùshr.

Please tell me a story.

B: 我 kéyi gěi 你 shwō  
一個 Měigwó gùshr.

I can tell you an  
American story.

6. A: 你 mǎi dūngsyī 了 ma?

Have you done your  
shopping?

B: Hái 沒 mǎi. no.

Not yet.

A: 你 chīfàn 了 ma?

Have you eaten?

B: Hái 沒 chī. no.

Not yet.

A: 你 hē jyǒu 了 ma?

Have you done any drink-  
ing?

B: Hái 沒. no.

Not yet.

A: 你 tàitai dzwofán 了 ma?

Has your wife prepared the meal?

B: Hái 沒 ne.

Not yet.

A: 你 dàu 我 jèr lái,  
你 tàitai jīdau ma?

Does your wife know you're coming to my place?

B: 他 不 jīdau, nà  
不 yàujīn.

She doesn't know; however, it doesn't matter.

A: 你 mǎi jèi 個 byǎu,  
你 tàitai jīdau ma?

Does your wife know you are buying this watch?

B: 他 不 jīdau, nà  
不 yàujīn.

She doesn't know; however, it doesn't matter.

8. A: 一 yīng 有 jīlyán?

How many companies are there in a battalion?

B: 一 yīng 有 sān lyán.

There are three companies in a battalion.

A: 一 lyán 有 jīpái?

How many platoons are there in a company?



B: 一 lián 有三 pái.

There are three platoons  
in a company.

A: 一 pái 有 jǐbān?

How many squads are there  
in a platoon?

B: 一 pái 有三 bān.

There are three squads  
in a platoon.

A: 一 bān 有 dwōshāu 人?

How many men are there  
in a squad?

B: 一 bān 有九個人。

There are nine men in a  
squad.

9. A: 你們 yǐjīng chī 了  
dzǎufàn 了 ma?

Have you had your break-  
fast yet?

B: 我們 yǐjīng chī 了  
dzǎufàn 了。

We have had our break-  
fasts.

A: 你們 yǐjīng chī 了  
wǎnfàn 了 ma?

Have you had your supper  
yet?

B: 我們 hái 沒 chī  
wǎnfàn ne.

We haven't had our  
suppers yet.

10. A: Dzwó 天的 bàu, Lǐ.  
Yíngjǎng kàn 了  
沒有?

Has Battalion Commander  
Lǐ read yesterday's  
newspaper yet?

L. 20

B: Dzwó 天的 bàu, Lǐ  
Yíngjǎng yǐjǎng  
kàn 了.

A: Jīn 天的 bàu, Lǐ  
Yíngjǎng hái 没 kàn  
ma?

B: Jīn 天的 bàu, Lǐ  
Yíngjǎng hái 没 kàn  
ne.

Battalion Commander Lǐ  
has read yesterday's  
newspaper.

Hasn't Battalion Comman-  
der Lǐ read today's  
newspaper yet?

Battalion Commander Lǐ  
hasn't read today's  
newspaper yet.

V. READINGA. Characters (Nos. 40-47)

40. 水 shuǐ N: water hē 水 - drink water
41. 太 tài A: too, excessively 太小 - too small  
 BF: 太太 (Mrs., madame) 太多 - too much  
 太太 - Mrs; wife
42. 可 kě BF: may, but, however 可以 - may, can  
 可是 - but  
 A: indeed, certainly
43. 以 yǐ BF: 可以 (may) 可以 - may  
 所以 (therefore) 所以 - therefore
44. 回 huí V: return 回 lái - come back,  
 回 a time return(here)
45. 子 zǐ P: (noun suffix) jū 子 - table  
 yǐ 子 - chair  
 xiǎo hái 子 - child  
 ér 子 - son
46. 多 duō SV: be much, many 多少? - how many?  
 多少? - how much?  
 hěn 多 - great many,  
 太多 very much  
 太多 - too much

47. 少 shǎo SV: be few, little

hǎn 不少 - quite a lot

少 shǎo huà, 多 dzwò shǎo - talk less, do more

shào SV: young, junior

少 wèi - second lieutenant

少 syào - major (military)

B. Sentences

1. 他可以 hē jyǒu ma?
2. 不可以, 太小.
3. 他可以 hē 水 ma?
4. 可以, 可是不 yào hē 太多.
5. 你是 dzwò 火車回 lái 的 ma?
6. 我不是 dzwò 火車回 lái 的.
7. 王 先生, 王 太太 dàu nǎr chyù 了?
8. Dàu 日 本 chyù 了.
9. 他們的小 hái 子也 chyù 了 ma?
10. 小 hái 子沒 chyù, 他們 dōu 太小.
11. 王 少 wèi 是在 nǎr chē 的 fàn?
12. 王 少 wèi 是在火車上 chē 的 fàn.
13. 王 太太是不是 zhōng guó rén?

14. 是，可是他 不 huòì syǒ 中 gwo lǐ.

15. 你有多少 chyan?

16. 我有兩 wàn 六 chyan 四 bǎi 五 wài chyan.

17. Li 少 syǎu, 的 chyan hǒn 多 ba?

18. Li 少 syǎu 的 chyan 不太多, hǒn 少

19. Jwǒ 子下 tou wòishonama 有 hǒn 多水?

20. 我可以 dzwò byó 人的 yǐ 子 可以?

21. 可以, 可是你 wòishonama 不 dzwò 你的 yǐ 子

22. 他 ~~的~~ 子 dzwò 了 我的 yǐ 子, swó 以, 我 yau dzwò  
byó 的 yǐ 子

23. 你 wèn 他 有多少 chyan 了 沒有?

24. 沒 no, 他 hái 沒 回 lái no.

C. Story

王 先生, 王 太太 的 大 ór 子 jyau 小 王, 小

王 dau jòr nyànshū lái 了, 他是 nyàn 中 wén lái 的, 七

月 四 hau 王 先生, 王 太太 lái kàn 小 王, wòn 小 王

sywó 了 多少 中 gwo hwà, hwài, syǒ 多少 中 gwo dz.

小王 shwō: 我 hwèi shwō hěn 多 中 gwo hwà, 可是 byé 人 不

一 dīng dǔng. 中 gwo dǎ 太 nán syě. 我 sywé 了 二十 五

個. 可是 jyòu hwèi syě 八 九 個. 我 syě 的 dǎ, byé

人 dōu shwō nà 是 hwà 不是 dǎ. 在 jèr 我 jyòu 可

以 hē 水, 不可以 hē jyòu. 我 天 天 wǎn 上 dǎu chéngli

chyu hē jyòu. Swó 以 我 不 ywanyi 在 jèr nyànshū.」

王太太 shwō: 在 jèr jyòu 可以 hē 水, 不可以

hē jyòu, nà 不 yàujǐn! 你 hái 是 小 hái 子, dzwèi hǎu )

不 hē jyòu. 你 天 天 gōn 你 們 的 先 生 shwō 中

wén, byé 人 一 dīng dǔng 你 的 中 gwo hwa. 你 wǎn-

上 不 dǎu chéngli chyu, 天 天 syě 一 dyanr dǎ,

你 的 中 gwo dǎ 一 dīng hěn hǎu. Yàu 是 你 不

nyànshū, 你 不 可 以 回 lái.」

VI. WRITING

## A. Writing (Characters 26-30)

雨 中 的 小 不

## B. Radicals

1. 入 (enter, 11) as in: 雨

(Note the difference between 人 and 入)

2. | (down stroke, 2) as in: 中

3. 白 (white, 106) as in: 的

4. 小 (small, 42) as the word: 小

5. 一 (one, 1) (see Lesson 19) as in: 不

LESSON 21

I. Structural Dialogue

1. A: 你是 shémma shǐhòu  
láí de?  
When did you come?
- B: 我是 In 天 dzǎu  
láí de.  
I came this morning.
- A: 你是 shémma shǐhòu  
dàu jèi 個 chéng  
láí de?  
When did you come to  
this town?
- B: 我是 chyùán 三月  
dàu jèr láí de.  
I came here last year  
in March.
- A: 你是 shémma shǐhòu  
dàu jèi 個 sywésyàu  
láí de?  
When did you come to  
this school?
- B: 我是 chyùán dàu  
jèi 個 sywésyàu  
láí de.  
I came to this school  
last year.
- A: 你是 shémma shǐhòu  
mǎi de nèi 個 syín  
lǐngdài?  
When did you buy that  
new necktie?
- B: 我是 上月 mǎi de.  
I bought it last month.



A: 你是 shémma shíhou  
mǎi 的 nàijyàn syīn  
chènshān?

When did you buy that  
new shirt?

B: 我是 上 líbài  
mǎi 的.

I bought it last week.

A: 你是 shémma shíhou  
gěi 你 太太 mǎi 的  
nèi 個 syīn mào 子?

When did you buy that new  
hat for your wife?

B: 我是 上 líbài 三  
gěi 他 mǎi 的.

I bought it for her on  
last Wednesday.

2. A: Nín 是 něinyán lái 的?

What year did you come  
here?

B: 我 是 一 九 四 八  
lái 的.

I came in 1948.

A: 是 něi 月 lái 的?

What month did you come  
here?

B: 是 七 月 lái 的.

I came in July.

A: 是 一 九 四 八  
七 月 , něi 天 lái 的?

On what day of July in  
1948 did you come?

B: 是 一 九 四 八  
七 月 , 十 五 hòu lái 的.

I came on July 15, 1948.

A: 是 nèi 天 shémma  
shíhòu lái 的?

What time of that day  
did you come?

B: 是 nèi 天 dzǎu 上  
lái 的.

I came in the morning  
of that day.

3. A: 你 是 shémma shíhòu  
dàu jèi 個 sywésyàu  
lái 的?

When did you come to  
this school?

B: Líbài 一 dzǎu 上  
lái 的.

I came in the morning on  
Monday.

A: Líbài 二 wǎn 上 你  
dàu nǎr chǎo 了?

Where did you go in the  
evening on Tuesday?

B: 我 dàu Lí 上 syàu nèr  
chyu nyàn Yingwén  
chyu 了.

I went to Colonel Li's  
place to study English.

4. A: 你們 jèi 八 個 人  
shéi dzwèi hǎu?

Who is the best among  
the eight of you?

B: Lí 一 wèi dzwèi hǎu.  
他 第 一.

Captain Li is the best.  
He is the first.

A: Shéi dì 二?

Who ranks second?

B: Wáng 中 wèi dì 二.

First Lieutenant Wang  
ranks second.

A: Shéi dì sān ?

Who ranks third?

B: Jāu 上 syàu dì sān .

Colonel Jāu ranks third.

A: 他們 dōu hěn tsūngmíng  
ba?

All of them are very  
intelligent, I suppose.

B: 他們 dōu hěn tsūngmíng.

They are all very intel-  
ligent.

5. A: Syàn 在 你們 nyàn  
dì jī 本 shū?

Which book in the series  
are you studying now?

B: Syàn 在 我們 nyàn  
dì èr 本 shū.

We are now studying the  
second book.

A: 你們 shémǎ shíhòu nyàn  
syīn shū?

When will you study a  
new book?

B: 下月 dì sān 個 líbài  
- 我們 yào nyàn syīn  
shū.

We'll study a new book  
in the third week of  
next month.

6. A: 你 有 jī 個 hái 子 ?

How many children do you  
have?

B: 有 三 個 .

We have three.

A: Dōu 是 nán 的 ma?

Are they all boys?

B: Dì-個 是 nán 的,  
 dì-二個 是 nǚ 的,  
 dì-三 個 也 是 nǚ 的。

The first one is a boy,  
 the second one is a  
 girl and so is the  
 third one.

A: Dì-個 hái 子 hwèi  
 shwō 中 gwo hwà ma?

Can the first child  
 speak Chinese?

B: 不 hwèi, 可是 dì-二個  
 hwèi shwō.

No, he can't. But the  
 second child can.

A: Wèishénma?

Why?

B: Yīnwèi dì-二個 syīhwan  
 sywé.

Because the second one  
 likes to learn.

7. A: 你 dàu nǎr chyù 了 ?

Where did you go?

B: Dàu chénglǐ 十五 jyō  
 chyù 了.

I went to Fifteenth  
 Avenue in town.

A: 十五 jyō 在 nǎr?

Where is Fifteenth  
 Avenue?

B: 在 十四 jyō hòutou.

It's behind Fourteenth  
 Avenue.

A: 我 hái 不 jīdàu 在  
 nǎr.

I still don't know where  
 it is.

L. 21

B: 在 十六 jǐ  
chyántou.

It's before Sixteenth  
Avenue.

A: 我 hái bù jīdào 在  
nǎr.

I still don't know where  
it is.

B: Míng 天 chǐng 你  
gēn 我 -kwàr' chyù,  
hǎu 不 hǎu?

How about going there  
with me tomorrow?

A: Hǎu. 我們 míng 天  
-kwàr chyù.

Fine. We will go there  
tomorrow.

8. A: 你 yǐ jīng chī 了 ba?

You have eaten, I suppose.

B: Hái 沒 chī ne.

Not yet.

A: 我 syǎng shū 你  
yǐ jīng yàn 了 ba?

I presume you have al-  
ready read your book,  
haven't you?

B: Hái 沒 yàn ne.

Not yet.

A: Byé 的 shí chīng dōu  
dzwò 了 ba?

I suppose you have done  
other things?

B: 也 dōu 沒 dzwò ne.

Not yet.

A: Wèi shén ma?

How come?

B: 太太 不在 jǐ,  
我 bù syí hwān dzwò shí.

My wife is not home; I  
don't like to work.

II. Basic Dialogue

Bái: Nín 是 něinyán  
dāng 的 bīng?                      What year did you join  
the army?

Lǐ: 是 一 九 四 五 nyán.                      It was in 1945.

Bái: 一 九 五 一 nyán                      What were you doing in  
nín dzwò shómma?                      1951?

Lǐ: 我 dāng twánjǎng.                      I was a regimental com-  
mander.

Bái: Dì jǐtwán twánjǎng?                      Commander of what  
regiment?

Lǐ: Dì 十 五 twán. Bái  
小 jye, 我 míng 天                      The Fifteenth Regiment.  
yàu dàu chōjàn chyù.                      I am going to the  
station tomorrow, Miss  
Bái.

Bái: 有 shómma yàujǐn 的 shǐ?                      Is there any important  
business?

Lǐ: 我 ér 子 míng 天                      My son is coming back  
hwóllai.                      tomorrow.

Bái: Shómma shǐhou dàu?                      When will he arrive?

Lǐ: Míng 天 jò 1 個 shǐhou                      He'll arrive around  
dàu.                      this time tomorrow.

Bái: 他 nyánnyán dōu  
hwéilai ma?

Does he come back every  
year?

Lǐ: Chyùnyán 沒 hwéilai,  
yīnwèi 他太 máng.

He didn't come back  
last year because he  
was very busy.

Bái: Míngnyán 他 也 yào  
hwéilai ba?

Will he come back  
again next year?

Lǐ: 我 hái 不 jǐdau ne. 我  
kéyi wèn wèn 他.

I don't know yet. I  
can ask him.

Bái: 他 是 tsúng nǎr  
hwéilai 的?

Where did he return  
from?

Lǐ: 是 tsúng 日本  
hwéilai 的.

He came back from Japan.

Bái: 他 是 jīnnyán dàu  
日本 chyù 的 ma?

Did he go to Japan this  
year?

Lǐ: 不是. 是 chyùnyán  
chyù 的.

No, he went last year.

Bái: 他 在 日本 dzwò  
shémma?

What has he been doing  
in Japan?

Lǐ: 他 dzwò mǎimai.

He has been in business.

Bái: Wèishémma 他 不 dāng-  
bīng?

Why wasn't he in the  
army?

Lǐ: 他 syīhwan dzwò  
mǎimai.

He likes to do business.

Bái: 他在日本 mài  
shómǎ?

What did he sell in Japan?

Lǐ: Mài chīchō.

He sold cars.

Bái: Mài syīn chīchō ba?

He sold new cars, I  
suppose.

Lǐ: 有 shīhou mài syīn 的,  
有 shīhou mài  
jyòu 的.

He sometimes sold new  
cars and he sometimes  
sold old cars.

Bái: 我 syīwàng néng gēn  
nín — kwàr dàu  
chōjàn chyù.

I hope I can go with  
you to the station.

Lǐ: Hǎu, 我們 — kwàr  
chyù.

O.K., we will go together.



Vocabulary

76. ba 吧 P: (sentence suffix implying probability)
77. chējàn 車站 N: station (bus or train)
78. chùyǎn 去年 MA/N: last year
79. dào 到 V: arrive at, reach
80. dì- 第 P: (ordinalizing prefix to numbers)
- 80.1 dìjǐ? 第幾 SP: which? (of series)
81. jīnnián 今年 MA/N: this year
82. míngnián 明年 MA/N: next year
83. niánnián 年年 A: year by year
84. shíhòu 時候 N: time
- 84.1 yǒu (de) shíhòu 有的時候 MA: sometimes
85. xīwàng 希望 V: hope that, hope for, expect that
86. tuán 團 N: regiment (army unit)
87. tuánjǎng 團長 N: regimental commander
88. yàujǐn 要緊 SV: be important
- 88.1 búyàujǐn 不要緊 SV: not important  
IE: never mind, that's nothing

## THE YEAR

yìchǎnyān-jyǒubǎi-lyòushí-yīnyán	1961
yìchǎnyān-bābǎinyán	1800
yìchǎnyān-chībǎi-yīshínyán	1710

(telephone-style)

yī-jyǒu-lyòu-yī-nyán	1961
yī-bā-líng-líng-nyán	1800
yī-chī-yī-líng-nyán	1710

něi(yì)nyán?	which year?
chǔnyán	last year
jīnyán	this year
míngnyán	next year

## THE MONTH

*jīywè? něi(ge)ywè?	which month?
shàng(ge)ywè	last month
syà(ge)ywè	next month

## THE WEEK

Lǐbàijī?	which day(of the week)?
něi(ge)lǐbài?	which week?
shàng(ge)lǐbài	last week
jī(ge)lǐbài	this week
syà(ge)lǐbài	next week

něilǐbàiyī?	which Monday?
shàng(ge)lǐbàiyī	last Monday
něilǐbàier?	which Tuesday?
syà(ge)lǐbàier	next Tuesday

## THE DAY

jīhàu?	which day(of the month)?
něi(yì)tyān?	which day
tyāntyān	everyday

\*Distinguish between Yīywè (January) and yīge ywè (one month).

III. Grammar Analysis

## 1. Stressing Time When

When it is desired to emphasize the time when an action did or did not take place, rather than the action itself, the shr.....de construction is used, as in the case of place, purpose, etc. Contrast the following pairs of sentences.

Wǒ péngyou dzwótyan  
láile.

My friend came yesterday.

Tā shr dzwótyan  
láido.

It was yesterday that he came.

Wǒ jīntyan mǎilo shū  
le.

I bought a book today.

Jèiběn búshr jīntyan  
mǎido.

This volume is not the one I bought today.

Translate the following, stressing the time when:

- 1) When did you buy this newspaper?
- 2) I bought this newspaper this morning.
- 3) When were you a company commander?
- 4) In 1950 I was a company commander.
- 5) When did you hear this story?
- 6) I heard this story at supper time yesterday.
- 7) When did you go to the countryside?
- 8) I went to the countryside in June.

2. Probability With The Suffix ba

The sentence suffix ba is used to imply a probability, a conclusion based on the best light one has, yet

leaving some room for doubt. Contrast the following pairs of sentences:

Tā hěn yǒu chǎn ma?

Is he very rich?

Tā hěn yǒu chǎn ba?

He is probably very rich, isn't he?

Tā shì yǐngjiǎng ma?

Is he a battalion commander?

Tā shì yǐngjiǎng ba?

He is a battalion commander, I suppose?

Nǐn hěn máng ma?

Are you very busy?

Nǐn hěn máng ba?

You are very busy, aren't you?

Translate the following:

1) I suppose you go to the country every year?

2) You have an important business, haven't you?

3) The railway station is probably here, isn't it?

4) You hope to go to China next year, don't you?

5) You are the regimental commander of the Fifth Regiment, aren't you?

### 3. Ordinal Numbers

Ordinal numbers are formed by prefixing the particle dì to cardinal numbers.

dìyīge líbài

the first week

dìèrge érdz

the second son

dìsānge nyǔer

the third daughter

dìyī tiān

the first day

diyī twán, diyī yíng,  
dièr lián

Second Company, First  
Battalion, First  
Regiment

Translate the following:

- 1) I want to tell two stories: the first one is a navy story, and the second is an army story.
- 2) The commander of the First Battalion is here.
- 3) I sold two paintings: the first one is a Chinese painting, and the second one is an American painting.
- 4) He is the platoon leader of the First Platoon, Third Company, Second Battalion.
- 5) She sang two songs: the first one is a Chinese song, and the second one is an American song.

#### 4. Dates and Addresses

When giving dates and addresses, or other detailed units, times and places, the larger units always precede the smaller. No de is used between the different divisions.

Yī-jyǒu-sz-wǔ nyán  
Bāywo shíwǔ hau.

August 15, 1945

Shànghái Yī-líng-wǔ  
Jyē sānhau

3 105th Street, Shànghái

Lǐbàisān wǎnshang

Wednesday evening

Translate the following:

- 1) I came here in March, 1950.
- 2) He has a shop on Fifth Avenue, Shanghai.
- 3) Fifty students came from Shanghai, China this year.
- 4) He is the squad leader of the First Squad, Second Platoon.
- 5) I live at 123 Fourteenth Street, New York City.

IV. Recombination Dialogue

1. A: Chyùnyán 你 在  
nǎr? Where were you last  
year?
- B: Chyùnyán 我 在  
Dégwo. I was in Germany last  
year.
- A: Něinyán hwéilai 的? What year did you re-  
turn?
- B: Jīnyán hwéilai 的. I returned this year.
- A: Míngnyán 你 yào dài  
shémma dìfang chyù? Where are you going next  
year?
- B: Dài Dégwo chyù, yīnwèi  
在 nèr 我 有 jǐ 個  
hǎo péngyou. I am going to Germany,  
because I have a few  
good friends there.
- A: 你 syīwang 你 nài jǐ 個  
hǎo péngyou dài Měigwo  
lái ma? Do you hope that those  
friends of yours will  
come to America?
- B: 我 hěn syīwang 他 們  
lái. I hope very much they  
will come.
- A: Nín gōn nín nàisyo  
péngyou 一 定 hěn  
hǎo ba? You must be very close  
friends, I suppose.

139

B: Hěn hǎo. 他們的  
chyán 也是我的  
chyán. 我的 chyán 也  
是他們的 chyán.

We are very good friends.  
We share one another's  
money.

2. A: Nín 是 něinyán dau  
Dégwo chyù 的?

What year did you go to  
Germany?

B: 一九四五.

1945.

A: 是 一九四五  
něi 月 dài 的?

In which month of 1945  
did you arrive?

B: 是 一九四五  
六月 dài 的.

I arrived in June of  
1945.

A: Nyánnyan dōu 有人  
tsúng Měigwo dau  
Dégwo chyù ba?

There are people who go  
to Germany from America  
every year, I suppose.

B: Nyánnyan dōu 有人  
tsúng Měigwo dau  
Dégwo chyù.

Right. There are people  
who go to Germany from  
America every year.

3. A: 火車 jàn 在 shémma  
dìfang?

Where is the railway  
station?

B: 七十二 jyē.

On 72nd Street.

A: Chì 車 jàn 在 shémma dìfang?

Where is the bus station?

- B: 也在七十二 jyē. Also on 72nd Street.
- A: 七十二。jyē 有 hěn 多 Měigwó 人 ba? Are there many Americans on 72nd Street?
- B: 有，可是不多。 Yes, there are some but not many.
- A: Nǎr dzwèi. 多? Where are most of the Americans
- B: 一百 lǐng 七 jyē dzwèi 多。 Most of the Americans are on 107th Street.
4. A: Nín 在 Dégwo dzwò shémma shì? What did you do when you were in Germany?
- B: 在 Měigwo Lùjyūn dāng twánjǎng. I was a regimental commander in the U. S. Army.
- A: Nín nèitwán 有 jǐyíng? How many battalions were there in your regiment?
- B: 有 三 yíng. There were three battalions.
- A: Nèi 三 yíng 也 dōu 在 chéng lítòu ba? All the three battalions were in the city, I suppose.



B: 不 dōu 在 chéng lítōu.  
 Dì yī yǐng 在 chéng lítōu, dì èr yǐng gān.  
 dì sān yǐng dōu 在 chéng wài tōu.

They were not all in the city. The First Battalion was in the city, but the Second and the Third were outside the city.

A: Nǐn chángcháng 有 chéng lítōu ba?

You are often in the city, I suppose.

B: 有 shíhòu 在 chéng lítōu, 有 shíhòu 在 chéng wài tōu.

Sometimes I was in the city and sometimes I was outside the city.

5. A: Yǐngjǎng 的 shǐchíng yǎng hěn yāujīn ba?

The duties of a battalion commander are very important, I suppose.

B: Yǐngjǎng 的 shǐchíng hěn yāujīn, 可是 bié rén 的 shǐchíng yě hěn yāujīn.

The duties of a battalion commander are very important, but the duties of the others are very important, too.

A: 我 bù dǒng nǐn 的 yǐsz.

I don't understand what you mean.

B: Yíngjǎng 有 yíngjǎng 的  
shǐchíng, liányǎng 有  
liányǎng 的 shǐchíng.  
Dōu hěn yàujǐn.

A battalion commander  
has his duties, and a  
company commander has  
his duties. All these  
duties are very impor-  
tant.

A: Páijǎng gēn bānjǎng  
的 shǐchíng 也 hěn  
yàujǐn ma?

Are the duties of a  
platoon leader and a  
squad leader very  
important, too?

B: Dōu yàujǐn.

They are all important.

A. Characters (Nos. 48-55)

48.	父 fù	BF: father	父母	- parents
			父 chin	- father
49.	母 mǔ	BF: mother	母 chin	- mother
50.	文 wén	BF: language	中文	- Chinese (language)
			<u>Ying 文</u>	- English (language)
			<u>日文</u>	- Japanese (language)
51.	男 nán	BF: male (of persons)	男人	- man, male
			男 sywé 生	men students
			男 péngyou	- boy friend
52.	女 nǚ	BF: female (of persons)	女 er	- daughter
			女 hái 子	- girl
			女 péngyou	- girl friend
53.	地 dì	BF: place N: ground	地方	- place
54.	方 fāng	BF: place SV: square	地方	- place
55.	分 fēn	M: cent; minute	五分 chyán	- five cents

B. Sentences

1. Bái 上 wèi 的 女 er nyán 中 文。
2. 他的 先生 是 LI 先生。
3. LI 先生 的 父 母 dōu dǔng Yīng 文。
4. 他 們 可 以 在 jèi 個 地 方 chǐfàn ma?
5. 在 火 車 上 chǐfàn hěn 有 yìsz.
6. 火 車 lǐtōu 有 水, 可 是 不 太 多。
7. 王 少 syào 有 多 少 chyán?
8. 他 jyòu 有 五 分 chyán.
9. 王 少 syào 有 四 個 男 hái 子。
10. 一 九 五 六 nyán 八 月 你 在 日 本 ma?
11. 三 個 男 的, 兩 個 女 的。
12. 我 不 在 日 本, 我 父 chīn 在 日 本。
13. 他 是 shémā shíhòu 回 lái 的 ?
14. 一 九 五 七, 六 月 十 九 hòu 回 lái 的。
15. 我 可 以 dào nǐ 個 地 方 chyù ma?
16. 可 以。 你 太 太 也 yào chyù ma?
17. 我 父 chīn, 母 chīn, 我 太 太, ér 子, 女 er,  
dōu syǎng chyù.

L. 21

18. 男人有男 póngyou 女人有女 péngyou.

19. 車 jàn 上有不少大 chī 車 ba?

20. 有小的, 沒有大的.

21. 上 tou 有 mǎu 子, 下 tou 有五分 chyán.

C. Story

父 chīn chyùnyán dào 日本 jyāu 中文 chyù 了 dzwó-

天父 chīn tsung 日本回 lái. 他 gōn 我們 shwō:

「我是三月十 háu dào 的 日本. Chīng 我 jyāusū 的

nòl 個 sywósyau 在 syāng 下, 我是 dzwò 火車 dào rēi-

個 syāng 下 chyù 的. Nòl 一天 sywósyau 有人 dào

火車 jàn lái jyō 我. Nòl 個 sywósyau hōn 大, 地方

hōn 好. 有男 sywó 生也有女 sywó 生. Sywó 生

的父母有的 shíhou lái kàn 我 jyāushū. 我 gōn

nòl syō sywó 生 shwō: 「你們有不 dǔng 的地方, 可-

以 wòn 我.」 男 sywó 生 cháng wòn 我, 可是女 sywó-

生 dōu 太 kòehi, dōu 沒 wòn 我. Nòl 個 sywósyau 的男-

先生 hōn 多 女先生 hōn 少. 我 dào 了的 di-

二天 dàu jyō 上的 pǔ 子 chyù gōi 你們 母 chīn mǎi-  
 了一個 byǎu; gōi 你們 mǎi 了 四 本 shū. 一 gùng jyōu yùng-  
 了 兩 bǎi 八 十 七 kwài 六 máu 八 分 chyán.

## A. Writing (Characters 31-35)

在 了 王 先 生

## B. Radicals

1. 土 (earth, 32) as in: 在

2. 丿 (hooked, 6) as in: 了

3. 王 (jade, 96) as in: 王

4. 儿 (man, 10) as in: 先

5. 生 (produce, 100) as in: 生

LESSON 22

I. Structural Dialogue

1. A: Nín yòng shémma syědz?                      What do you use to write?  
B: 我 yòng bǐ syědz.                                      I write with a pen.
- A: Nín yòng shémma hwà  
shwō jèi 個 gùshr?                                      What language will you use  
to tell this story?
- B: 我 yòng 中 gwo hwà shwō.                              I'll tell it in Chinese.
- A: Nín yòng shémma hwà  
shwō nèi 個 gùshr?                                      What language will you  
use to tell that story?
- B: 我 yòng Yīng 文 shwō.                                      I'll tell it in English.
2. A: Lǐ 上 syàu gěi shéi  
shwō gùshr?                                      To whom is Colonel Lǐ  
telling a story?
- B: Gěi Bái 小 jye shwō.  
gùshr.    He is telling it to Miss  
Bái.
- A: Lǐ 上 syàu gěi  
shéi mǎi Yīng 文 shū?                                      For whom is Colonel Lǐ  
buying an English book?
- B: Gěi Bái 小 jye mǎi.                                      He is buying it for Miss  
Bái.
- A: Lǐ 太太 gěi shéi  
dzwò dzăufàn?    For whom does Mrs. Lǐ  
prepare breakfast?



B: Gěi Lǐ 上syàu.

For Colonel Lǐ.

A: Jāng 少syàu gěi  
shéi kāi chī 車?

For whom did Major Jāng  
drive?

B: Gěi Lǐ 太太, yīnwèi  
Lǐ 太太 不 hwèi kāi.

For Mrs. Lǐ because she  
can't drive.

A: Shéi gěi Jāng 少syàu  
mǎi yān?

Who is going to buy  
tobacco for Major Jāng?

B: Bái 上 wèi gěi Jāng  
少syàu mǎi yān.  
yīnwèi Jāng 少syàu  
太 máng.

Captain Bái is going to  
buy tobacco for Major  
Jāng, because Major  
Jāng is too busy.

A: Shéi gěi Bái 上 wèi  
dzwò wǎnfàn?

Who is cooking supper for  
Captain Bái?

B: Bái 小jye gěi 他  
父 chin dzwò wǎnfàn,  
yīnwèi 他 母 chin  
不在 jyā.

Miss Bái is cooking  
supper for her father  
because her mother  
isn't at home.

A: Shéi gěi Bái 小jye  
mǎi syīn mǎu 子 chyù 了?

Who has gone to buy a  
new hat for Miss Bái?

B: 他 母 chin gěi 他 mǎi  
syīn mǎu 子 chyù 了.

Her mother has gone to  
buy a new hat for her.

3. A: Nín yí-dìng 有 hěnxuō 多  
chányān ba?

You must be very rich,  
aren't you?

B: 没 多少.

I don't have much money.

A: Nín yí-dìng 有 hěnxuō 多  
shū ba?

You must have a great many  
books, I suppose.

B: 没 多少.

I don't have many books.

A: Nín yí-dìng 有 hěnxuō 多  
péngyǒu ba?

I suppose you must have a  
lot of friends.

B: 没 几个.

Not many.

A: Nín 有 shénme shì?

What is on your mind?

B: 没 shénme shì.

I don't have anything on  
my mind.

A: Nín dào nǎr chù?

Where are you going?

B: 我 不 dào nǎr chù.

I am not going anywhere.

A: Nín yí-dìng 有 hěnxuō 多  
yīshang ba?

I suppose you must have a  
lot of clothes.

B: 我 没 shénme yīshang,  
jǐyǒu 有 jǐjiàn  
jǐyǒu 的.

I don't have much, only  
a few pieces of old  
clothes.

A: Nín gēn shéi shuō  
huà?

With whom are you talk-  
ing?

L. 22

B: 沒 gēn shéi shwō hwà.

I am not talking to anyone.

4. A: Bái 小jye 有  
shémma shū?

What books does Miss  
Bái have?

B: 他 shémma shū dōu  
有.

She has all kinds.

A: Lǐ 上syàu hwèi kái  
shémma chī 車?

What kinds of cars can  
Colonel Lǐ drive?

B: 他 shémma 車 dōu  
hwèi kái.

He can drive all kinds.

A: 你 chōu shémma yān?

What kind of tobacco do  
you smoke?

B: 我 shómma yān dōu  
chōu.

I smoke all kinds.

A: 你 ài syǒ nǎi 個  
中 gwó dz?

Which Chinese character  
do you like to write?

B: 我 nǎi 個 dōu ài syǒ.

I like to write all the  
characters.

A: 你 hwòl chàng nǎi 個  
gōr?

Which song can you sing?

B: 我 nǎi 個 dōu hwòl chàng.

I can sing all the songs.

5. A: Nín néng dzwò shémma fàn?

What kind of food can you cook?

B: 我 shémma fàn 也 不 néng dzwò.

I can't cook any kind of food.

A: Nín syǎng dǎu nǎr chyù?

Where do you want to go?

B: Nǎr 我 也 不 syǎng chyù.

I don't like to go anywhere.

A: 他 jǐdau shémma?

What does he know?

B: 他 shémma 也 不 jǐdau.

He doesn't know anything.

A: 你 ywányi gěi shéi chyán?

To whom are you willing to give your money?

B: Shéi 我 也 不 ywányi gěi.

I am not willing to give my money to anyone.

A: 他 dǔng shémma?

What does he know?

B: 他 shémma dōu 不 dǔng.

He doesn't know anything.

A: 他 有 shémma yān?

What kind of tobacco does he have?

B: 他 shémma yān dōu

He doesn't have any because he doesn't smoke.

没有, yīnwèi 他 不 chōu yān.

L. 22

A: 你 yào shémma jyǒu?

What kind of wine do you want?

B: Shémma jyǒu 我也  
不 yào, yīnwèi 我 太  
小, 我 不 hǎ jyǒu.

I don't want any wine because I am too young, and I don't drink.

A: Nín syǎng dào nǎr chyu?

Where do you want to go?

B: Nǎr 也 不 syǎng chyu,  
yīnwèi 我 太 lèi.

I don't want to go anywhere because I am too tired.

A: Jèi 本 shū 你 syǐhwan  
gěi shéi?

To whom do you wish to give this book?

B: Shéi 我 dōu 不 syǐhwan  
gěi, yīnwèi 我 hái  
没 nyàn no.

I don't wish to give it to anyone because I haven't read it yet.

II. Basic Dialogue

- Bái: Lǐ 先生, nín jīdau jīn 天 wǎn 上 有 shémma shì ma? Do you know what you are going to do this evening, Mr. Lǐ?
- Lǐ: 是 不是 你 lái niàn Yīngwén? Is it that you are coming to study English?
- Bái: 不是. 我 父 chīn chīng nín chǎfàn. No, my father is inviting you to dinner.
- Lǐ: 一 dīng 有 hěnn 多 人 ba? There must be many people, I suppose.
- Bái: 没 多 少. 有 王 Shǐjǎng. Not many. Division Commander Wáng will be there.
- Lǐ: Háí 有 byé 人 ba? There are some others, I suppose.
- Bái: Dwèi 了. Háí 有 jǐwèi twánjǎng, jǐwèi yǐngjǎng. Right. There will be a few regimental commanders and a few battalion commanders.
- Lǐ: Chǎ shémma fàn? What food will we have?

Bái: Shémǎ dōu 有 有  
Jūngwó tsài, 也有  
Měigwó tsài.

Everything. There will  
be Chinese and American  
food.

Lǐ: 有 筷子 ma?

Will there be chopsticks?

Bái: Yǒu 筷子 也有  
dāu 子, chā 子, shāur.

There will be chopsticks  
as well as knives,  
forks and spoons.

Lǐ: Shéi gěi 我們 dzwófān?

Who will cook for us?

Bái: 有 五個人 gěi  
我們 dzwófān.

Five persons will cook  
for us.

Lǐ: Dì 三 tuān tuānjǎng 也  
lái ma?

Will the Third Regimen-  
tal Commander be there,  
too?

Bái: Dwèi 了. 他 也 lái.  
他是我的 hǎu  
péngyou. Chyùnyán  
他 gěi 我 mǎi 了. -jǐ  
Dégwo shǒuchyāng.

Right, he is coming. He  
is a good friend of  
mine. Last year he  
bought me a German  
pistol.

Lǐ: 他 也 是 我的 hǎu  
péngyou. 一 九 三  
七 nyán, 我們 在  
-kwàr sywé lùjyūn  
yùng 的 dà pào.

He is a good friend of  
mine too. In 1937 we  
studied the artillery  
pieces used by the  
Army together.

Bái: Tingshuo 他是一個  
hén háu de wánlǎng.

I heard he is a wonderful  
regimental commander.

Lǐ: Wéi le. Yě yě xiū  
sīhuān chī zhōngguó  
fàn. Tā kěyǐ chī  
liǎng wǎn fàn.

That's right. He likes  
Chinese food very  
much. He can eat two  
bowls of rice.

Bái: Nǐ gēn yóu nǐn dōu  
sīhuān chī ma?

Do you like both fish and  
meat?

Lǐ: Shénme wǒ dōu sīhuān  
chī.

I like to eat everything.

Bái: Nǐn xiànzài yǒu shénme  
shìr ma?

Are you busy now?

Lǐ: Wǒ méi shénme shìr.  
Xiànzài wǒ kěyǐ  
jiāo nǐn yǎng Yīngwén.

I don't have anything to  
do. Now I can teach  
you English.

Bái: Jīntiān nǐ yòng Yīngwén  
gǎi wǒ shuō nàige  
gùshì ma?

Are you going to tell me  
that story in English  
today?

Lǐ: Hǎo, wǒ yòng Yīngwén  
shuō nàige gùshì.

Okay, I'll tell you that  
story in English.

(Lǐ xiānshēng shuō  
gùshì)

(Mr. Lǐ tells the story)



Lǐ: Bái 小jye, nǐ  
tīng 了 jèi 個 gùshì 了 .  
Nǐ dǒng 不 dǒng?

Now you have heard this  
story, Miss Bái. Do  
you understand it?

Bái: 我 不 dōu dǒng.

I don't understand all  
of it.

Lǐ: Nà 不 yāujǐn. Míng 天  
我 hái 可以 gǎi 你  
shwō jèi 個 gùshì.

That doesn't matter. I  
can tell you this  
story again tomorrow.

Bái: Hǎo, syèsyè nín.

Fine. / Thank you.

89. chādz 叉子 N: fork
90. dà pào 大炮 N: big gun, artillery piece  
90.1 pào 炮 N: artillery piece
91. dāudz 刀子 N: knife
92. dwèile 對了 IE: that's right! (indicates agreement)
93. -jīr 枝 M: measure for rifle, pistol, carbine, pencil, cigarette, etc
94. kwàidz 筷子 N: chopsticks
95. ròu 肉 N: meat
96. sháur 杓兒 N: spoon  
M: spoonful of
97. shīr 師 N: division (army unit)
98. shīrjǎng 師長 N: division commander
99. tāng 湯 N: soup
100. tīngshwō 聽說 IE: hear(d) it said that
101. ts'ai 菜 N: vegetables, dish of Chinese food
102. wǎn 碗 N/M: bowl; bowl of
103. yú 魚 N: fish
104. yùng 用 CV: with (using)  
V: use, employ

III. Grammar Analysis

## 1. Co-verbs of Interest

Yòng (with, using), like gēn (with) and gěi (for), is a co-verb. A co-verb functions like a preposition in English. It and its object precede the main verb and form a setting for the action of the main verb.

Jūnggwō rén yòng  
kwaidz chḗfān.

Chinese eat with chop-  
sticks.

Měigwō rén yòng dāudz,  
chādz chḗfān.

Americans eat with  
knives and forks.

Tāmen dōu yòng sháur  
hō tāng.

They all drink soup  
with spoons.

Wǒ gēn wǒ tàitai chyù  
māi ròu, māi yú.

I go with my wife to buy  
meat and fish.

Wǒ tàitai gěi wǒ māi  
yān.

My wife buys tobacco for  
me.

Tā yòng Yīngwón shwō  
gushr.

He tells a story in  
English.

Translate the following:

- 1) To whom did you tell the story?
- 2) Can you say it in German?
- 3) Please ask him in Chinese.
- 4) He draws pictures with pencils.
- 5) I bought a book for my daughter.

## 2. Question Words as Indefinites

Question words like shéi (who), shémma (what), nǎr (where), nǎige (which), jǐ-, dwōshǎu (how many, how much),

dzǒmma (hóu), etc. are commonly used as indefinites like the English "anyone", "anything", "anywhere".

Nèige wǎnli yǒu shémǎ?	What is in that bowl?
Nèige wǎnli méi shémǎ.	There isn't anything in that bowl.
Nǐ yào dǎu nǎr chù?	Where are you going?
Wǒ bú dǎu nǎr chù.	I am not going anywhere.
Tā yǒu dwōshǎu chǎn?	How much money does he have?
Tā méi dwōshǎu chǎn.	He doesn't have much.
Nǐ kànle jǐběn shù?	How many books have you read?
Wǒ méi kàn jǐběn.	I haven't read many.

Translate the following:

- 1) I don't have any important business.
- 2) Do you have any good watches?
- 3) I don't have many expensive clothes.
- 4) There isn't anything cheap in that store.
- 5) He didn't go anywhere.

### 3. Inclusiveness and Exclusiveness

To express inclusive ideas such as "everyone" and "everything" or exclusive ideas such as "no one" and "nothing", question words as indefinites and dōu or yě are used. For emphasis the question word is often placed at the beginning of a sentence.

Shéi syǐhwan tá?

Who likes him?

Shéi dōu syǐhwan tā.

Everyone likes him.

Shémma rén yàu mǎi  
jèige jwōdz?

Who wants to buy this  
table?

Shémma rén dōu búyàu mǎi  
jèige jwōdz.

Nobody wants to buy this  
table.

Nǎr yǒu Jūnggwo fàngwǎr?

Where is there a Chinese  
restaurant?

Nǎr dōu yǒu Jūnggwo  
fàngwǎr.

There are Chinese res-  
taurants everywhere.

Něige mǎudz hǎu?

Which hat is good?

Něige mǎudz dōu bùhǎu.

None of the hats is good.

Nǐ yàu něige chyānbǐ?

Which pencil do you want?

Něige wǒ yǒ búyàu.

I don't want any.

Nǐ syǐhwan dzēm̄ma dzwò?

How do you like to make  
it?

Dzēm̄ma dzwò dōu kěyǐ.

Whatever way to do it is  
all right.

Translate the following:

1) Who has money? Nobody has money.

2) Which child is intelligent? Everyone is intelli-  
gent.

3) Which lady is your girl friend? None is my girl  
friend.

4) Where can I smoke? You can smoke anywhere.

5) Which house is yours? None is mine.

#### 4. Yidyǎr (a little)

Most syllables ending in -r are words (or parts of words) containing the suffix 兒 (or is romanized as -r; the "e" in the er in a case like this is dropped, as in "picture"

hwà 畫 ér 兒, being spelled hwàr). Syllables ending in  
 finals, such as: an, ai, ei, etc, drop the final letter  
 and add the suffix "-r", thus:

yídyǎr (a little)	{ Com- bina- tion of             }	yí(-) <u>dyǎn</u> (點) <u>er</u> (兒)
yíkwàr (together)		yí(-) <u>kwài</u> (塊) <u>er</u> (兒)
nèr or něr (there, where or any- where)		<u>nèi</u> or <u>něi</u> (那) <u>er</u> (兒)

1. A: 你 hwèi yǐng dāu 子  
chǐfàn ma?

Do you know how to eat  
with a knife?

B: 我 hwèi, 我 也 hwèi,  
yǐng chā 子.

Yes, I do. I know how  
to use a fork too.

A: 你 yǐng chā 子 chǐ  
中 gwo fàn ma?

Do you use a fork to  
eat Chinese food?

B: 不... 我 yǐng kwài 子  
chǐ 中 gwo fàn.

No, I eat Chinese food  
with chopsticks.

A: 你 yǐng shémma hē  
tāng?

What do you use to drink  
soup with?

B: 我 yǐng sháur hē  
tāng.

I drink soup with a  
spoon.

2. A: Tīngshwō 王 Shǐjǎng  
nèi shǐ lǐtōu 的  
jyǔngwān dōu 是  
tsúng 日本 lái 的.

I heard that all the  
officers in Division  
Commander Wáng's unit  
came from Japan.

B: Dwèi 了. Swó 以 dōu ài  
chǐ 日本 fàn.

Right. Therefore, all  
of them like Japanese  
food.

A: Chǐ 日本 fàn 也 yǐng  
kwài 子 má?

Do you eat Japanese food  
with chopsticks, too?

B: Dwèi 了, 是 yòng kwài 子  
chǎ.

Right, we eat with chop-  
sticks.

A: Nèisyē jyūngwān dōu  
tsúng shémma sywésyàu  
lái 的?

What schools do those  
officers come from?

B: Tsúng shémma sywésyàu  
lái 的 dōu 有.

They come from all kinds  
of schools.

3. A: 你們 nèi - bān 有  
shǒuchyāng ma?

Are there pistols in your  
squad?

B: 有. 也有 bùchyāng.

Yes, there are. There  
are also rifles.

A: 一 gùng 有 多少 jǐ?

How many are there alto-  
gether?

B: 我 不 jǐdau, 我  
syǎng 我們 有  
jǐ jǐ.

That I don't know. But  
I think we have a few.

A: 我 syǎng 沒有 大 pàu  
ba?

I suppose you don't have  
big guns.

B: 我 不 可以 shwō.

I am not allowed to tell  
you.

4. A: 你 shémma shíhou  
mǎi 的 nèi 個 sháur?

When did you buy that  
spoon?



B: 是 dzwó 天 mǎi 的。

I bought it yesterday.

A: 在 nǎr mǎi 的 ?

Where did you buy it?

B: 是 在 chéng lǐtōu  
mǎi 的。

I bought it in the city.

A: 你 gēn shéi - kwàr  
chyù mǎi 的 ?

With whom did you go to  
buy it?

B: 我 gēn 我 nyūer  
-kwàr chyù mǎi 的。

I went to buy it with my  
daughter.

5. A: 一 九 五 一 - nyán 你  
在 nǎr ?

Where were you in 1951?

B: 我 在 Jyòujīnshān.

I was in San Francisco.

A: Jyòujīnshān 的 chéng-  
lǐtōu ma?

Were you in the city of  
San Francisco?

B: Chéng lǐtōu 二 十 七  
Jyō.

Twenty-seventh Street in  
the city.

A: 一 九 五 三 - nyán  
你 hái 在 nèr ma?

Were you still there in  
1953?

B: Hái 在 Jyòujīnshān,  
可是 不是 在  
二 十 七 Jyō, 是  
五 十 六 Jyō.

I was still in San Fran-  
-isco. However, I was  
on Fifty-sixth Street  
not Twenty-seventh  
Street.

A: Nèi 個 shíhou nín  
在 lùjyūn lītou  
ma?

Were you in the army  
then?

B: 在 hǎijyūn lītou.

No, I was in the navy.

A: 在 hǎijyūn lītou  
hěn 有 yǐsz ba?

It was very interesting  
to be in the navy, I  
suppose.

B: Dwèi 了. Hěn 有 yǐsz.  
Dàu shémma 地方  
chyù dōu 不 yào chyán.

Yes, it was very interest-  
ing. I could go every-  
where free of charge.

A: Shéi gěi nǐ chyán?

Who paid your expenses?

B: Shéi 也 不 gěi wǒ  
chyán. Dzwò chwán  
不 yào chyán.

Nobody paid my expenses.

It was free for me to  
travel by boat.

A: Hái 有 shémma  
有 yǐsz 的 shìshìng?

What else was interesting?

B: 有 yǐsz 的 shìchìng  
hěn 多.

There were many inter-  
esting experiences.

A: Chǐng nǐ shwō 一 shwō.

Please tell me.

B: 一 九 五 三 七 月  
我 dàu 了 Fàgwo.

I went to France in  
July, 1953.

A: 是 dzwò chwan  
chyù 的 ma?

Did you go by boat?

B: Dwèi 了. Fàgwo hěn  
有 yìsz.

Yes. France is an  
interesting place.

A: 一九五四你 hái  
在 Fàgwo ma?

Were you still in France  
in 1954?

B: 一九五四 五月  
我 dài 日本 chyù 了.

In May, 1954, I went to  
Japan.

A: 日本 hěn 有 yìsz ma?

Is Japan an interesting  
place?

B: 日本人 hěn kèchi;  
日本 dūngsyi hěn  
pyányi.

Japanese people are  
polite, and Japanese  
things are reasonable.

A: 一九五五你在  
nār?

Where were you in 1955?

B: 我在 Dógwo.

I was in Germany.

A: 有 yìsz ma?

Was it interesting?

B: 没 yìsz. 我 syihwan  
Fàgwo, 也 syihwan  
日本, 可是我  
不 syihwan Dógwo.

It was boring. I liked  
France and Japan, but  
I didn't like Germany.

A: Wèishénma 你不syīhwan  
Dégwo?

Why didn't you like  
Germany?

B: Yīnwèi 在 nèr shénma  
shì dōu 没yìsz.

Because nothing was inter  
esting over there.

A. Characters (Nos. 56-63)

56. 從 tsúng CV: from 從日本來的 - came from Japan  
(从) 從這兒到那兒 - from here to there
57. 這 jè, jèi SP: this 這個人 - this person  
(这) 這兒 - here  
這個 sywésyau - this school
58. 到 dào V: arrive at, reach 到中 gwo 去 - go to China  
CV: to (towards) yíjīng 到了 - already arrived
59. 那 nà, nǎ, nǎi SP: that; which 那兒 (nèr) - there  
那兒? (nǎr) - where?  
那本 shū - that book  
那不 yàujīn - that's nothing
60. 兒 ér BF: son 兒子 - son  
P: diminutive suffix 女兒 - daughter  
畫兒 huà 兒 - drawing or painting  
一 dyǎn 兒 - a little bit
61. 來 lái V: come 到這兒來 - come here  
(来) PV: (indicates arrival here) yíjīng 來了 - already come  
上來 - come up

62. 去 chyu V: go 去 nyan - last year  
 PV: (indicates arrival there) 到那兒去 - go there
63. 走 dzǒu V: walk, go, leave dōu 走了 - all went  
 走一走 - take a walk

B. Sentences

1. 你從 shómma 地方來的?
2. 我從日本來的。
3. 你 gōn shói 來的?
4. Gōn 王先生 - kwai 兒來的。
5. 你們可以到 中 gwo 去 ma?
6. 不可以
7. 你們可以 dzwò 火車從這兒到 Fàgwo 去 ma?
8. 不可以, yīnwoi 從這兒到那兒沒有火車
9. 你太太也是從日本來的 ma?
10. 他沒來, hái 在那兒 no.
11. 你父母 syāng 到那兒去?

L. 22

12. 我父母太 lǎu, 他們那兒也不 syǎng 去

13. 你 syǎng shémma shíhou 走?

14. 我不 syǎng 走, 我 hǒn syíhwan 這兒.

15. 你的小 hái 子 dōu 是男的 ma?

16. 兩個男的, 三個女的.

17. 你 yào 我 gēn 你去 mǎi dēu 子, chā 子 má?

18. 我 yǐng kwài 子, 我也不 yào mǎi shémma.

19. 我去 mǎi sháu 兒去, 你 yào 我 shémma shíhou

回來?

20. 你 shémma shíhou 回來 dōu syíng.

21. 你們一 dīng 有 hǒn 多 chyan bá?

22. 沒有多少 chyan.

C. Story

小王 Jyā 在 Jyòu Jínshān. 他在這個 sywé syau nyán  
日文. 他 syíhwan 一個人在這兒 nyànshu, swǒ-  
以他去 nyán Jyòu 一個人到這個 sywé syau 來.  
他太太, 女兒, 兒子 dōu 沒 gōn 他到這兒來.

Dzwo 天小王太太 gōn 他女兒, 兒子從 Jyòu, jīn-shān 來看小王來了.. wān 上他們到這兒 jyō- 上的一個日本 fāngwǎn 兒 chī 日本 fān 去了. 他們 chī 了一 bān,, 一 wò 日文的先生也來了. 那 wò 先生 yòng 日文 wòn 小王 他男 hái 子 jyāu shómma, 女 hái 子 jyāu shómma; 他們從 shóm-ma 地方來的. 那 wò 先生 shuō 了不少的 hwa, 可是 hōn 多 小王 gōu 不太 dǐng.

那 wò 日本 先生 走了 小王 兒子 gōn 王太太 shuō: 「母 chīn, 父 chīn hōn wò 日語 kǎi 日本 càn, 可是 wò shóm-ma 父 chīn 不太 huò: jūn 日文, gōn 他 先生 shuō hwa? 」



VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 36-40)

本 火 水 車 日

B. Radicals

1. 木 (wood, 75) as in: 本

2. 火 (fire, 86) as the word: 火

3. 水 (water, 85) (see Lesson 19) as the word: 水

4. 車 (cart, 159) as the word: 車

5. 日 (sun, 72) (see Lesson 18) as the word: 日

C. Dictionary Drill

Sixty Common Chinese Radicals - "Man" Group

Radical Number	Name	Radical	English Meaning	Examples
9	tān-lì-jén- erh	人, 人	Man	你 今
19	力	力	Power	動 加 努
30	k'ou	口	Mouth	吃 可 右 哭 和
38	nü	女	Woman	好 妹 妻
44	shih	尸	Corpse	尺 屋
61	shù-hsīn-erh	心, 心, 小	Heart	快 忙 念 愛 恭

1. Exercise: Find from dictionary Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning		Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
值			仍		
如			展		
健			吵		
効			慌		
尹			尼		
居			怪		
慈			呼		

L. 22

2. Home work: Find from dictionary Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning		Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
憂			唇		
怖			伴		
勇			令		
復			勁		
嫁			俯		
妙			厲		
哺			加		

LESSON 23

I. Structural Dialogue

1. A: 你 tǐ shéi mǎi bào?

For whom are you buying  
a newspaper?

B: 我 tǐ 我 太太  
mǎi bào.

I am buying a newspaper  
for my wife.

A: 你 太太 tǐ shéi  
dzwòfàn?

For whom does your wife  
cook?

B: 我 太太 tǐ 我  
gōn 我 兒子 dzwòfàn.

My wife cooks for me and  
my son.

A: 你 兒子 tǐ shéi syě  
syìn?

For whom does your son  
write letters?

B: 我 兒子 tǐ 我  
母 chin syě syìn.

My son writes letters  
for my mother.

A: Jāng Páijǎng tǐ shéi  
mǎi syó?

For whom does Platoon  
leader Jāng buy shoes?

B: Jāng Páijǎng tǐ 我  
兒子 mǎi syó.

Platoon leader Jāng  
buys shoes for my son.

A: 有兩個 Jāng Páijǎng,  
是那個 Jāng Páijǎng?

There are two Platoon  
leader Jāngs; which one  
do you mean?

B: Dài gāngkwēi 的 那個  
Jāng Páijǎng tī 我  
兒子 mǎi syé.

The Platoon Leader Jāng  
who is wearing a hel-  
met buys shoes for my  
son.

A: 你 兒子 wèishómma  
不去 mǎi?

Why doesn't your son go  
and buy?

B: 他 不 hwèi mǎi.  
Swó 以 一dǐng yàu  
有 byé 人 tī 他 去  
mǎi.

He doesn't know how to  
buy; therefore, some-  
one has to buy for  
him.

2. A: Jāng Páijǎng tī 你 兒子  
mǎi 了 syé 了 ma?

Did the Platoon Leader  
Jāng buy the shoes for  
your son?

B: Mǎi 了.

Yes, he did.

A: 你 兒子 dwèi Jāng  
Páijǎng shwō shómma?

What did your son say to  
Platoon Leader Jāng?

B: 他 dwèi Jāng Páijǎng  
shwō: "Syèsyò."

He said "thank you" to  
Platoon Leader Jāng.

A: Jāng Páijǎng dwèi 你  
兒子 shwō shómma?

What did Platoon Leader  
Jāng say to your son?

B: 他 dwèi 我 兒子 shwō:  
"沒 shómma."

He said "don't mention it"  
to my son.

- A: 你 兒子 dwèi 你 shwō  
shémma?  
What did your son say to you?
- B: 他 dwèi 我 shwō:  
"那 shwāng syé hěn  
hǎu."  
He said to me, "That pair of shoes is very fine."
- A: 你 dwèi 你 兒子 shwō  
shémma?  
What did you say to your son?
- B: 我 dwèi 他 shwō:  
"Hěn hǎu, 可是  
hěn gwèi."  
I said to him, "Very good, but very expensive."
- A: Jāng Páijǎng dwèi 你  
shwō shémma?  
What did Platoon Leader Jāng say to you?
- B: 他 dwèi 我 shwō: "那  
shwāng syé 十五  
kwài chyán."  
He said to me, "That pair of shoes costs fifteen dollars."
- A: 你 dwèi 他 shwō shémma?  
What did you say to him?
- B: 我 dwèi 他 shwō: "太  
gwèi, 不 yàu."  
I said to him, "Too expensive, I don't want it."
- A: Jāng Páijǎng dwèi 你  
shwō shémma?  
What did Platoon Leader Jāng say to you?
- B: 他 dwèi 我 shwō:  
"那 shwāng syé, nín  
兒子 yǐjīng chǎn 了."  
He said to me, "Your son has already put the shoes on."

A: 你 dwèi 他 shwō  
shémma?

What did you say to him?

B: 我 dwèi 他 shwō:  
"你 gěi chyán, 我  
不 gěi chyán."

I said to him, "You pay  
for it, I won't pay for  
it."

A: Jāng Páijǎng tsūngming  
ma?

Is Platoon Leader Jāng  
clever?

B: 他 - dyǎn 免 也  
不 tsūngming.

He isn't clever at all.

3. A: 他 hwèi syě 中 gwó  
字 ma?

Can he write Chinese  
characters?

B: 一個 dōu 不 hwèi syě.

He can't even write one.

A: 他 hwèi chàng 中 gwó  
歌 免 ma?

Can he sing Chinese  
songs?

B: 一個 也 不 hwèi chàng.

He can't even sing one.

A: 他 hwèi shwō Ying 文 ma?

Can he speak English?

B: 一 jyu dōu 不 hwèi shwō.

He can't even speak one  
sentence.

A: 他 - dīng 有 hěn  
多 chyán ba?

He must be very rich, I  
suppose.

B: Bānk wài dōu 沒有。

He doesn't even have  
fifty cents.

A: 他 一dìng 有 hěn  
多 女 péngyou ba?

He must have many girl  
friends, I suppose.

B: 一個 也 沒有。

Not even one.

A: 他 hwèi kài chē ba?

Can he drive?

B: 一 dyǎn 兒 也 不 hwèi.

Not at all.

A: 他 hwèi kāi fēijī ba?

Can he fly an airplane?

B: 一 dyǎn 兒 也 不 hwèi.

Not at all.

A: 他 hwèi dzwò shémma?

What can he do?

B: Jyòu hwèi hōjyǒu.

He can only drink wine.



II. Basic Dialogue

Bái: Lǐ 先生, nín dzǎu.

Good morning, Mr. Lǐ.

Lǐ: Bái 小姐, nín dzǎu.

Good morning, Miss Bái.

Bái: Nín 有 gūngfu ma?

Are you free?

Lǐ: 有. Nín 有 shénma shì?

Yes. What is on your mind?

Bái: Chíng nín tǐ 我 syě  
- fēng syìn, 可以 ma?

Will you please write a  
letter for me?

Lǐ: Yòng Yīng 文 syě ma?

Is it to be written in  
English?

Bái: Dwèi 了. 我 syīwang nín  
yòng Yīng 文 tǐ 我 syě.

That's right. I hope  
you will write the letter  
in English for me.

Lǐ: 你 不 hwèi yòng Yīng 文  
syě syìn ma?

Can't you write it in  
English?

Bái: - Jyù 也 不 hwèi.

Not even one sentence.

Lǐ: 你 先 shwōshwō, 你  
yào gěi shéi syě syìn.

Tell me first to whom you  
want to write.

Bái: Gěi 一 個 kūngjyūn  
jyūngwān.

To an air force officer.

Lǐ: 那 wèi kǔngjūn jūngwān  
syǐng shémǎ?

What is the air force  
officer's name?

Bái: Syǐng Jàu. 他 父 chin  
是 jyūntwánjǎng.

His name is Jàu. His  
father is an army  
commander.

Lǐ: Dì jǐ Jyūntwán  
Jyūntwánjǎng?

The commander of which  
army?

Bái: Dì 六 Jyūntwán  
Jyūntwánjǎng.

The commander of the  
Sixth Army.

Lǐ: 你 先 dwèi 我 shwō-  
shwō, 你 yào shwō  
shémǎ?

Tell me first what you  
wish to say.

Bái: 我 syǎng 這 Libàil 六  
gēn 他的 mèimei  
一 kwài 兒 到  
Yīnggwó 去 wan 兒 wan 兒  
他的 mèimei 是 我的  
hǎo péngyǒu.

I wish to go with his  
sister to England on a  
trip this Saturday.  
His sister is a good  
friend of mine.

Lǐ: 到 那 兒 去 wán 兒?

Where to?

Bái: 到 Yīnggwó 去.

To England.

Lǐ: 你 父 chin jǐdau ma?

Does your father know  
about it?

Bái: 一 yān 兒 也  
不 jǐdau.

He doesn't know about it  
at all.

Lǐ: Yīnggwó, shémma 地方  
dōu 不 tswò, 可是  
你 可以 先 wòi  
你 父 chin. shwōshwo.

Any place in England is  
fine, but you should  
first consult your  
father.

Bái: 我 父 chin 不 jǐdau  
不 yàujin. 這是  
那 wòi kūngjyun jyūn-  
gwān gōi 我的 syin.

It doesn't matter if my  
father doesn't know about  
it. Here is the letter  
that air force officer  
sent me.

Lǐ: 我 可以 kànkàn  
他的 syin ma?

May I read his letter?

Bái: 可以.. Nin kàn, 這個  
jyù 子 是 shómma yisz?

Yes, you may. Look,  
what does this sentence  
mean?

Lǐ: 他 gōn 他 父 chin dōu  
wòn 你 父 chin hǎu.  
你 wòishómma 不 先  
gōi 你 父 chin kànkàn  
這 fōng syin?

Both he and his father  
send regards to your  
father. Why didn't  
you let your father  
read this letter  
first?

Bái: Nín syǎng 我 父 chin  
ywànyì 我 去 ma?  
這 fēng syìn 有 yùng  
ma?

Do you think my father  
will let me go? Is  
the letter of any  
help?

Lǐ: 有 yùng. Hěn  
有 yùng.

Yes, very much help.

Bái: Hǎu, 我 先 dwèi 我  
父 chin shwōshwō,  
míng 天 我 chǐng nín  
tí 我 syě syìn.

Well, I will first talk  
to my father then I  
will ask you to write  
the letter for me  
tomorrow.

Lǐ: Hǎu. Dzài jyàn!

Fine. Goodbye!

Vocabulary

105. bútsuò 不錯 SV: be not bad, quite good
106. dwèi 對 CV: towards (facing), to
107. fēng 封 M: measure for letters
108. gūngfu 工夫 N: free or leisure time
109. -jyù 句 M: measure for hwa, spoken words
- 109.1 jyüdz 句子 N: sentence
110. jyūntwán 軍團 N: army (army unit)
111. jyūntwánjǎng 軍團長 N: army commander
112. kūngjyūn 空軍 N: air force
113. syān 先 A: first
114. syin 信 N: letter, mail
115. tì 替 CV: for (in place of)
116. wár 玩兒 V: play
117. .hǎu 問好 IE: inquire after another's welfare
118. yǒuyòng 有用 SV: be useful
- 118.1 méiyòng 沒用 SV: be useless

III. Grammar Analysis

## 1. Co-verbs of Interest Continued

Tì (for) and dwèi (to, towards) are co-verbs of interest. The sentence pattern for these two co-verbs is the same as that introduced in Lesson 22. Both tì and gěi are translated into "for", however, there is this difference: gěi means for the benefit of, and tì means to substitute for.

Nǐ néng tì wǒ  
dzwò jèige shì ma?

Can you substitute for me  
in doing this?

Chǐng nǐ tì wǒ gēn  
Jāng Syānsheng  
shwōshwo.

Please talk to Mr. Jāng  
for me.

Chǐng nǐ tì wǒ kāi  
chíchō.

Please take over my  
driving.

Wǒ méi dwèi tā shwō  
shémma.

I didn't tell him any-  
thing.

Tā dwèi wǒ hěn kèchǐ.

He was very polite to  
me.

Wǒ dwèi jèige shì shémma  
dōu bù jīdāu.

I know nothing regarding  
this matter.

§

Translate the following:

- 1) Can you substitute for me in flying this airplane?
- 2) I can sing a few songs as your substitute.
- 3) Will you please thank Mr. Jāng for me?
- 4) What did you say to him?
- 5) This regimental commander is very polite to his soldiers.

## 2. Intensifying Exclusiveness

To express an intense degree of exclusiveness, as in the English phrase "not even a little", yi and a measure, or some expression which signifies a very small number or amount, is used before dōu or yě and the negative form of the verb.

Tā yíjyù Jūnggwo hwà  
dōu búhwèi shwō.

He can't speak even one  
sentence of Chinese.

Wǒ yíwǎn fàn dōu  
méichī.

I didn't eat even one  
bowl of rice.

Nèige rén yídyǎr syíwàng  
dōu méiyóu.

That man is hopeless.

Jèr yíge dāudz dōu méiyóu.

There is not even one  
knife here.

Lóushang yíjāng hwàr yǒ  
méiyóu.

There is not even one  
picture upstairs.

Wǒ yídyǎr gūngfu dōu  
méiyóu.

I don't have any free  
time.

Translate the following:

- 1) I didn't take even one spoonful of soup.
- 2) All of them are soldiers, there isn't even one officer.
- 3) They don't have even one child.
- 4) I have four brothers, and one younger sister, but not even one elder sister.
- 5) He cannot tell even one story in Chinese.

## 3. Names of Countries

Names of countries are commonly constructed out of a sound syllable taken from the native name of that

country, plus the ending -gwó(country).

Měigwo	United States of America
Yínggwo	England
Égwo or Ěgwo	Russia
Fàgwo or Fǎgwo	France
Dégwo	Germany
Yígwo	Italy
Jūnggwo (middle country)	China
Rběn	Japan



IV. Recombination Dialogue

1. A: 你有 gūngfu; 你 dzwò  
shémma?

What do you do when you  
are free?

B: Syǒ syǐn.

Write letters.

A: Gěi shéi syǒ?

To whom do you write?

B: 有的 shǐhòu gěi 我  
póngyou syǒ syǐn,  
有的 shǐhòu tǐ 我  
母 chīn syǒ syǐn.

Sometimes I write to my  
friends and sometimes  
I write for my mother.

A: Nín 母 chīn 不 hwèi  
syǒ ma?

Can't your mother write?

B: 他 - fēng syǐn 也  
不 hwèi syǒ.

She can't write letters  
at all.

A: 你 chángcháng gěi shéi  
syǒ shǐn?

To whom do you often  
write?

B: 我的 péngyou, 有的是  
hǎi jūn, 有的是  
kūng jūn, 有的是  
lù jūn.

I have friends in the navy,  
in the air force, and  
in the army.

A: 你 那 syē dzài lù jūn  
lǐtòu 的 péngyou dōu  
dāng shémma?

What are the positions of  
your friends who are in  
the army?

B: 有的 dāng jūntwánjǎng,  
有的 dāng shíjǎng,  
有的 dāng twánjǎng,  
有的 dāng yíngjǎng.

L. 23  
Some are army commanders,  
some are division commanders,  
some are regimental commanders and  
some are battalion commanders.

A: 你的 péngyou lítóu,  
有的 dāng liánjǎng  
ma?

Are there company commanders among your friends?

B: 一個也沒有。

None.

2. A: Jāng Páijǎng yòng 了  
十五 kwài chyan  
mǎi 了 - shwāng syé,  
tíngshwō 了 ma?

Have you heard that  
Platoon Leader Jāng  
bought a pair of shoes  
for fifteen dollars?

B: Tíngshwō 了。

Yes, I have.

A: Shéi gěi 的 chyan?

Who paid for it?

B: 我沒 tíngshwō。

That I haven't heard.

A: 那個 hái 子 hěny  
syíhwan 那 shwāng  
syé, 你 tíngshwō 了  
ma?

Have you heard that the  
child likes that pair  
of shoes very much?

B: Tíngshwō 了。

Yes, I have.

A: 可是他父 chin  
不 syǎng gěi chyán,  
你 jīdau ma?

Do you know that his  
father doesn't want to  
pay for them?

B: 我 jīdau.

Yes, I know.

A: 那個 hái 子的 父 chin  
hěn tsūngming ma?

Is the father of that  
child very clever?

B: Hěn tsūngming. 他  
不 tì tā 兒子 mǎi  
syé.

He is very clever. He  
doesn't buy shoes for  
his son.

A: 他 tì 他 兒子  
mǎi shémma?

What does he buy for his  
son?

B: Mǎi wán 兒 的 dūngsyi.

He buys toys.

A: Dōu 有 shémma wán 兒 的  
dūngsyi?

What are the toys?

B: 有 shǒuchāng, 有 bùchyāng,  
hái 有 dà pào.

There are pistols, rifles,  
and big guns.

A: Dōu 是 jīn 的 ma?

Are they real guns?

B: Dōu 不 是 jīn 的, 一 gùng  
有 sān jī bùchyāng,  
liǎng jī shǒuchyāng,  
sān 個 dà pào.

They are not all real  
guns. There are alto-  
gether three rifles, two  
pistols and three big  
guns.

A: 他 兒子 syihwan wán 兒  
那 syē dūngsyi ma?

Does his son like to  
play with those things?

B: Hěn syihwan.

Very much.

3. A: 你 兒子 大 不 大?

Is your child big?

B: 不 大, 可 是 hwèi  
yùng kwài 子 chǎfàn.

He is not, but he can eat  
with chopsticks.

A: 是 chǎ 中 gwo fàn ma?

For eating Chinese food?

B: Yùng kwài 子 chǎ 中 gwo  
fàn, 可 是 也 hwèi  
yùng dāu 子, chā 子  
chǎ Měigwo fàn.

He uses chopsticks to eat  
Chinese food; but he  
can also use knives and  
forks to eat American  
food.

A: 他 yùng shémma hē  
tāng?

What does he use to drink  
soup with?

B: Yùng shāu 兒 hē tāng.

He used spoons.

4. A: 我 néng tì nín  
dzwò shémma?

What can I do for you?

B: 不 kèchi, shémma nín  
dōu 不 néng tì 我  
dzwò.

Please don't be formal,  
there is nothing you  
can do for me.

A: 我 可以 tǐ nǐn  
syědž ma?

Can I write for you?

B: 不 可以, yīnwèi 我  
yàu syě.

No, because I want to  
write.

A: 我 可以 tǐ nǐn  
mǎi chènshān ma?

Can I buy shirts for  
you?

B: Syèsyè, 我 syǎng  
我 míng 天 yàu 到  
chéng lítòu 去  
mǎi.

Thank you. I am think-  
ing of buying some in  
town tomorrow.

5. A: 他 shémǎ shíhòu syě 的  
這 本 shū?

When did he write this  
book?

B: 他 是 去 nyán syě 的.

He wrote it last year.

A: 在 shémǎ 地 方  
syě 的?

Where did he write it?

B: 在 Yīnggwò syě 的.

He wrote it in England.

A: 這 本 shū hén hǎo ba?

This book is quite good,  
I suppose.

B: 不 twò, 可是 這 個  
jyù 子 太 cháng, 有  
三十 個 dz.

Not bad. But having  
thirty words, this  
sentence is too long.

A: Nín syǎng Bái 小. jǐe  
nǐng dǔng jǐjyù?

How many sentences do  
you think Miss Bái  
can understand?

B: 我 syǎng 他 bànjyù  
dōu 不 dǔng.

I don't think she can  
understand half of the  
sentence.

A: 這 三個 jyù 子, nín  
jǐdau 是 shémma  
yǐsz ma?

Do you know the meaning  
of these three sen-  
tences?

B: Bànjyù dōu 不 jǐdau.

I don't understand even  
half of a sentence.

6. A: 一 jyūntwán 有 jǐshǐ?

How many divisions are  
there in an army?

B: 一 jyūntwán 有 三 shǐ.

There are three divisions  
in an army.

A: 一 shǐ 有 jǐtwán?

How many regiments are  
there in a division?

B: 一 shǐ 有 三 twán.

There are three regiments  
in a division.

A: 一 twán 有 jǐying?

How many battalions are  
there in a regiment?

L. 23

B: 一 twán 有 三 yíng.

There are three battalions  
in a regiment.

A: 一 yíng 有 jǐlyán?

How many companies are  
there in a battalion?

B: 一 yíng 有 三 lyán.

There are three companies  
in a battalion.

A: 一 lyán 有 jǐpái?

How many platoons are  
there in a company?

B: 一 lyán 有 三 pái.

There are three platoons  
in a company.

A: 一 pái 有 jǐbān?

How many squads in a  
platoon?

B: 一 pái 有 三 bān.

There are three squads  
in a platoon.

V. READINGA. Characters (Nos. 64-71)

64. 要 yào V: want, want to 要 bǐ - want a pen  
 AV: going to, 要 jǐn - important  
 expect to, shall, will; 他要走 - he wants to  
 want to 要是 leave  
 要是 - if, in case
65. 用 yòng V: use, employ 用 kuài 子 chǐ - eat with  
 CV: with (using) chopsticks  
 BF: use (noun) 有用 - useful
66. 甚 shén BF: what 甚麼? - what  
 (什) 没甚麼 - don't mention  
 it  
 为甚麼? - why?
67. 麼 ma P: (question suffix inter- 你好麼 - how are you?  
 changeable with as interrogative particle only)
68. 好 hǎo SV: good, all 好 kàn - beautiful  
 right  
 A: easily, well 好 tīng - good to  
 PV: (indicates satisfactory completion of the action) 好不好? - How about it?  
 好 chī - be good to eat
69. 東 dōng PW: east 東西 - thing (in the sense of object, article)  
 (东)



70. 西 syī PW: west mǎi 東西 - buy things
71. 行 sying SV: be satisfactory, all right, "Can do" 行不行? - Okay or not?  
不行 - won't do  
這個行麼? - is this all right?

[háng]

\* A different pronunciation and meaning of this word is placed within the bracket [ ] and will be introduced in later lessons.

B. Sentences

1. 你太太到那兒去了?
2. Mǎi 東西去了。
3. Mǎi 甚麼東西去了?
4. Dōu 是我們要用的東西。
5. 他是甚麼 shíhou 去的?
6. Dzwō 天 dzāu 上去的。
7. 甚麼 shíhou 回來?
8. 他要 jīn 天 wǎn 上回來。
9. 他有多少 chyán?
10. 他有四 chyān kwài chyān.
11. 他要 mǎi 好東西, 不好的不要。
12. 他 mǎi 的東西, gōi 我 kǎnkān 行不行?
13. 行, 你 mǐng 天來 kàn 行不行?

14. 甚麼 shíhòu dōu 行. 你 syǎng 你太太  
dōu mǎi 甚麼?

15. Gěi 我父母 mǎi yíshàng, gěi 我兒子 mǎi  
小火車, gěi 我女兒 mǎi 兩本 shū.

16. 你父母甚麼 shíhòu 到你這兒來的?

17. 一九五七 nián 八月來的.

18. 你父母 gěi 你兒子, 女兒, mǎi 東西了麼?

19. 一 diǎn 兒也沒買, yīnwèi 我 duōi 他們  
shǎo 了: 小 hái 子 不要 用 甚麼 東西.

20. 你要用的東西, 你父母 tì 你 mǎi 了沒  
mǎi?

21. 我不要他們 mǎi, 他們 mǎi 的東西 dōu  
太好 kàn, 也 dōu 太 guòi.

G. Story

王太太很好 kàn 他 dzwè 的 中 guò fàn hèn 好-  
chǎf. 他 jyǒu mǎi 有用的東西. 沒用的他不 mǎi.

有 shíhòu 他要 王 先生 cōn 他到 ayāng 下 去.

兒，可是王先生有要 jīn 的 shì，不 nòng 去。

王先生 wèn 他：「你一個人去，行麼？」他 shuō：

「好，那不要 jīn，我可以 gōn 我女 póngyou 去。」

他也不 wèn 王先生 wèi 甚麼不 nòng 去。

一九五六 nián 十月，王先生 ~~父母~~ 從 syāng 下  
到他們 jyā 來了。王先生到 byò 的地方去了。

王先生沒甚麼 chyán，一個月 jyòu gōi 王太太兩

bǎikwài chyán。有 shíhou, jyāli 一分 chyán 也沒有。王

太太 jyòu 到一個 pù 子去 dzwòshì；有了 chyán，

mǎi tsài gōi 他們 dzwòfàn。這 syō shì，在

syānli 他一 jyù 也沒 dwò 王先生 shuō。

VI. WRITING

## A. Writing (Characters 41-45)

太 可 以 回 子

## B. Radicals

1. 大 (great, 37 (see Lesson 17) as in: 太

2. 口 (mouth, 30) as in: 可

3. 人 (man, 9) (see Lesson 17) as in: 以

4. 囗 (enclosure, 31) as in: 回

5. 子 (child, 39) as the word: 子

LESSON 24

I. Structural Dialogue

1. A: Lǐ 先生 syě 了  
 syǐn, jyòu dzwò 甚麼  
 了?  
 What did Mr. Lǐ do after  
 he had written the  
 letter?
- B: Lǐ 先生 syě 了 syǐn,  
 jyòu chǐ dzǎufàn 了.  
 He ate breakfast after he  
 had written the letter.
- A: Bái 小姐 jye kàn 了 syǐn,  
 jyòu dzwò 甚麼 了?  
 What did Miss Bái do after  
 she had read the letter?
- B: Bái 小姐 jye kàn 了 syǐn,  
 jyòu gěi 他 父 chin kàn-  
 kàn.  
 Miss Bái showed the letter  
 to her father after she  
 had read it.
- A: 他 父 chin kàn 了 syǐn,  
 jyòu dzwò 甚麼 了?  
 What did her father do,  
 after he had read the  
 letter?
- B: 他 父 chin kàn 了 syǐn,  
 jyōu dwèi Bái 小姐 jye  
 shwō: "Hě'n 好."  
 After her father had read  
 the letter, he said to  
 Miss Bái, "Very good."
- A: Bái 上 wèi dwèi 他 女兒  
 shwō 了 hwà, jyòu 去  
 dzwò 甚麼 去了?  
 What did Captain Bái do  
 after he had talked to  
 his daughter?

B: Bái 上wèi dwèi 他 女兒  
shwō 了 hwà jyòu gēn  
他 太太 要 chyán  
去了。

A: 他 太太 gěi 了 他 chyán,  
jyòu dzwò 甚麼 去了 ?

B: 他 太太 gěi 了 他  
chyán, jyòu 也 來 kàn  
syìn 來了。

A: Bái 太太 kàn 了 syìn,  
jyòu dzwò 甚麼 了 ?

B: Bái 太太 kàn 了 syìn,  
jyòu gěi 他 女兒 hōn  
多 chyán.

A: Bái 小jyè 有 了 chyán,  
jyòu dzwò 甚麼 去了 ?

B: Bái 小jyè 有 了 chyán,  
jyòu gēn 一 個 kūngjyūn  
jyūngwān 的 mèimoi 到  
Yinggo 去了。

Captain Bái went to ask  
for money from his wife  
after he had talked to  
his daughter.

What did his wife do after  
she had given him money?

His wife came over to  
read the letter after  
she had given him money.

What did Mrs. Bái do after  
she had read the letter.

Mrs. Bái gave her daughter  
a great deal of money  
after she had read the  
letter.

What did Miss Bái do after  
she had received the  
money?

She went to England with an  
air force officer's sis-  
ter after she had receiv-  
ed the money.

A: 他們到了英國。  
Jyòu dzwo (英國)

They had come to after  
England.

B: 他們到後，jyòu  
gōi 和父母 syō syin.

They wrote letters to her  
parents, after they ar-  
rived in England.

A: 他們 syō 了 syin, jyòu  
dzwo 甚麼了?

What did they do, after  
they had written the  
letters?

B: 他們 syō 了 syin, jyòu hōu  
Yīnggwō hāu.

They had said British  
papers after they had  
written the letters.

A: 他們 kàn 了 hāu jyòu  
dzwo 甚麼了?

What did they do after  
they had read the news-  
papers?

B: 他們 kàn 了 hāu jyòu 去  
kàn 那個 kungjyūn  
jyūngwān 去了。

They went to see that  
air force officer.

A: Hòu 來 Bái 和 Jyòu gōn  
那個 kungjyūn jyūngwān  
到那兒去了?

Where did Miss Bái and  
the air force officer  
go?

B: Bái 小 Jyòu jyòu 去 mǎi  
Yīnggwō mǎu 子 了。

Miss Bái went to buy  
British hats.

A: 他的男 péngyou kàn

他 mǎi 了 syīn mào 子

jyòu dzwò 甚麼了?

What did her boy friend do

after he saw her buying

new hats?

B: 他的男 péngyou kàn 他

mǎi 了 mào 子, jyòu mǎi

了 syīn língdài, syīn

chènshān.

Her boy friend bought new

neckties and new shirts

after he saw her buying

hats.

2. A: 他 mǎi 了 jǐ 個 syīn mào 子?

How many new hats did she

buy?

B: 他 mǎi 了 兩個 syīn

mào 子.

She bought two new hats.

A: 他 mǎi 了 jǐ jyàn syīn

chènshān?

How many new shirts did

he buy?

B: 他 mǎi 了 三 jyàn syīn

chènshān.

He bought three new shirts.

A: 他 mǎi 了 jǐ 個 syīn língdài?

How many new neckties

did he buy?

B: 他 mǎi 了 五 個 syīn

língdài.

He bought five new neck-

ties.

A: 他們在 Yīnggwo syě 了

jǐ fēng syīn?

How many letters did they

write in England?



B: 他們在 Yínggwo syě 了  
五 fēng syín.

They wrote five letters  
in England.

A: 他們在 Yínggwo kàn 了  
几本 shū?

How many books did they  
read in England?

B: 他們在 Yínggwo kàn 了  
三本 shū.

They read three books in  
England.

A: 他們在 Yínggwo 用 了  
多少 -chyán?

How much money did they  
spend in England?

B: 他們在 Yínggwo 用 了  
五 bǎikwài chyán.

They spent five hundred  
dollars in England.

3. A: Lǐ 先生 tī 他 syě 了  
jǐfēn syín 了?

How many letters has  
Mr. Lǐ written for  
her?

B: Yǐjīng tī 他 syě 了  
三 fēng syín 了, míng 天  
hái 要 tī 他 syě  
一 fēng.

He has written three  
letters and he will  
write one more tomor-  
row.

A: Bái 上 wèi gěi 了 他  
女兒 多少 chyán 了?

How much money has  
Captain Bái given to  
his daughter?

L. 24

B: Yǐjīng gěi 了他 五 bǎikwài  
了, hái yào gěi 他  
三 bǎikwài, yīnwèi 他 hěn  
syīhwan 他 女兒.

He has given her five  
hundred dollars and  
he is going to give her  
three hundred more, be-  
cause he likes his  
daughter very much.

A: Bái xiǎo jīe 有了 五 bǎikwài  
chǎn, 他 hái syǎng 要  
麼?

Does Miss Bái still want  
more money after she  
received five hundred  
dollars?

B: -dìng hái syǎng 要,  
yīnwèi shéi dōu syīhwan  
chǎn.

Surely she wants more  
money, because every-  
body likes money.

II. Basic Dialogue

- Lǐ: Bái 小 jye, 你 gēn 那 wèi Did you and that air  
kūngjyūn jyūngwān 的 force officer's sister  
mèimei 在 Yinggwō buy anything in Eng-  
mǎi 東西了麼? land, Miss Bái?
- Bái: 我們 mǎi 了 hōn 多 We bought a lot of  
東西. things.
- Lǐ: Hòu 來 你們 到 那兒 Where did you go after-  
去了? wards?
- Bái: 我們 到 Fàgwō 去了. We went to France.
- Lǐ: 你們 dōu hwèi shwō Can both of you speak  
Fàgwō hwà 麼? French?
- Bái: 我們 dyǎn 兒 也 Neither of us speak  
不 hwèi French at all.
- Lǐ: 你們 yīngdāng sǐwó You should learn some  
dyǎn 兒 Fàgwō hwà. French.
- Bái: Dwèi 了. 我們 在 Fàgwō That's right. We took  
天天 上 kè. lessons every day while  
we were in France.
- Lǐ: 上 甚麼 kè? What lessons did you  
take?

Bái: 我們 sywé hwàhwà 免。

We studied painting.

Lǐ: 你們在那免  
上的 kè?

Where did you take your  
lessons?

Bái: 是在一個 Fàgwo  
先生 jiā lǐtōu 上 kè。

In the home of a French  
teacher.

Lǐ: 是 dzwò 車去的麼?

Did you go by car?

Bái: Dwèi 了。 Dzwò chī 車  
去的。

Right, we went by car.

Lǐ: 你們一天 dōu 在  
他那免麼?

Were you at his place the  
whole day?

Bái: 在那免 chī 中 fàn,  
chī 了 fàn jiù 上 kè;  
下了 kè jiù hwéijyā.  
Jēn máng.

We had lunch at his place  
and after lunch we  
took lessons. We came  
home after the lessons.  
We were really busy.

Lǐ: 那 dīng hěn 有 yǐsz.  
你們 wèi 甚麼 syǎng  
hwéigwó ne?

That must have been very  
interesting. Why did  
you want to return to  
this country?

Bái: Yīnwei 我們 mei chyán.

Because we ran out of  
money.



Lǐ: 你們 wèi 甚麼沒  
gěi 你 父母 syě  
syān 要 chyan?

Why didn't you write to  
your parents asking  
for money?

Bái: 我 父 chin 有 一 個  
péngyou 在 Fàgwo jù.  
我去 jǎu 他 了.

My father has a friend  
staying in France. I  
went to look for him.

Lǐ: 他 gěi 你 chyan 了 麼 ?

Did he give you any  
money?

Bái: 他 gěi 了 我們 jǐbái  
kwài chyan.

He gave us several hun-  
dred dollars.

Lǐ: 你 shwō 了 bàn 天, 我  
hái 不 dǒng 你們 wò  
甚麼 hwéigwó?

You have told me a lot,  
but I still don't  
understand why you came  
back.

Bái: Dì 一, yīnwó 我們 沒  
chyan; dì 二, yīnwó  
我 父 chin 的 那 wò  
péngyou 到 byé 的 地 方  
去 了, dì 三, 我們 甚 麼  
地 方 dōu wán 鬼 jǎwó 以  
jyòu hwó 來 了.

First of all, we ran out  
of money; secondly,  
that friend of my fa-  
ther's has gone to  
some other place.  
Thirdly, we had visit-  
ed every place; conse-  
quently, we came back.

Lǐ: 你們 mǎi 東西  
了麼?

Did you buy anything?

Bái: 我 mǎi 了 五十 jiàn  
yīshang, 我的女 péng-  
you mǎi 了 三 jiàn  
syīn yīshang, 甚麼  
dōu hěn gwèi, 可是  
東西 jēn 好.

I bought fifty dresses  
and my girl friend  
bought three new coats.  
Everything is very ex-  
pensive but really  
good.

Lǐ: 在 Fāgwō jū 一天 用  
多少 chān?

How much does it cost to  
stay in France for one  
day?

Bái: 有 三十 kwāi chān,  
jyòu gòu 了.

Thirty dollars would be  
enough.

Lǐ: 你 yīngdāng syèsye  
你 父 chin ba?

You should thank your  
father, I suppose.

Bái: 他 有 chān. 他 甚麼  
dōu gōi 我.

He is rich. He gives me  
everything.

Vocabulary

119. bàntyān 半天 MA/N: a long while, half day
120. gòule 夠了 IE: that'll be enough
121. hòulai 後來 MA: afterwards; and then
122. hwéi 回 V: return (to)
- 122.1 hwéigwó 回國 VO: return to one's native country
- 122.2 hwéijyā 回家 VO: return home
123. jǎu 找 V: look or hunt for
124. jù 住 V: live or stay in or at
125. jyòu 就 A: then (introduces subsequent actions)
126. shàng 上 V: ascend, get on; go to
- 126.1 shàngkè 上課 VO: go to class; attend class
127. syà 下 V: descend, go down; get off
- 127.1 syàkè 下課 VO: class dismissed
128. yityān 一天 MA/N: a day; a whole day
129. yīngdāng 應當 AV: ought to, should

### III. Grammar Analysis

#### 1. -le as a Verb Suffix and a Sentence Suffix

To show completed action in a sentence which has the subject-verb-object construction, -le may be used as a verb suffix, or as a sentence suffix at the end of the sentence, or in both places. When -le is used as a sentence suffix at the end, the sentence is complete.

Wǒ chīfān le.	I have eaten.
Wǒ chīle fàn le.	I have eaten.
Wǒ chànggē le.	I have sung a song.
Wǒ chàngle gē le.	I have sung a song.
Tā mǎi dāudz, chādz le.	He bought knives and forks.
Tā mǎile dāudz, chādz le.	He bought knives and forks.

#### 2. -le Used Only as a Verb Suffix but Not as a Sentence Suffix

When -le is only used as a verb suffix and there is no -le at the end of the sentence, the sentence may not be complete and therefore requires a subsequent statement.

This is true especially when the object is simple. Jyòu is often used in the subsequent statement and it is not stressed.

Wǒ chīle sānwǎn fàn.	I had three bowls of rice.
Wǒ chīle fàn, jyòu kǎnbào.	I'll read the newspaper, after I have eaten.



Wǒ shwǒle yige youyisзде  
gùshr.

I told an interesting  
story.

Wǒ shwǒle gùshr, jyòu  
dzòu.

I'll go, after I have  
told the story.

Wǒ mǎile hěn dwō dūngsyi.

I bought a lot of  
things.

Wǒ mǎile dūngsyi, jyòu  
hwéijyāle.

I returned home, after  
I did the shopping.

Translate the following:

- 1) I'll come, after I have heard the story.
- 2) I have heard three interesting Chinese stories.
- 3) I'll go to class, after I have had my breakfast.
- 4) I have already had my breakfast.
- 5) He has put on his good looking new uniform.
- 6) He'll go to the railway station, after he has put on his uniform.
- 7) He bought a cheap new hat.
- 8) He went to school, after he bought a hat.
- 9) His wife made a hundred pieces of candy.
- 10) He goes to sell the candy, after his wife has made it.
- 11) He has gone to the airport.
- 12) The airplane comes after he has come to the airport.
- 13) He has gone home.
- 14) He eats supper, after he has come home.
- 15) I have bought the meat.
- 16) After I have bought the meat, I will go and buy the fish.

IV. Recombination Dialogue

1. A: Bái 小 Jyè 在 Jyā 麼? Is Miss Bái at home?
- B: 不 在 Jyā. No, she is not at home.
- A: 到 那兒 去了? Where did she go?
- B: 到 chéng lítòu 去了. She went to town.
- A: Dzwò 甚麼 去了? Why did she go?
- B: Jǎu mǎu 子 去了. She went to look for her hat.
- A: 他 甚麼 shíhou 去的? When did she go?
- B: 他 chī 了 中 fàn Jyòu 去了. She went right after lunch.
- A: 甚麼 shíhou hwéi 來? When is she coming back?
- B: Shó1 也 不 jīdau. Nobody knows.
2. A: Nín dìdì 天天 到 sywósyàu 去麼? Does your younger brother go to school everyday?
- B: 從 Lībài 一 到 Lībài 五, He goes everyday from Monday through Friday.  
他 天天 去.
- A: 他 到 那兒 去 wán 兒 麼? Does he go there to play?

B: 不是去 wán 兒, 是  
去 上 kè.

He goes to attend classes,  
not to play.

A: 他 dzwò 甚麼 車 去 ?

By what car does he go  
there?

B: 他 dzwò sywésyàu 的 ohì 車  
去.

He goes there by school  
bus.

A: 他 甚麼 shrhòu hwéi jyā?

When does he come home?

B: 他 下了 kè jyòu hwéi jyā.

He comes home right after  
classes.

3. A: Bái 上 shrh 甚麼 shrhòu  
hwéi 的 gwó?

When did SFC Bái come  
back to this country?

B: 去 nyán hwéi 的 gwó.

He came back last year.

A: 他 甚麼 shrhòu 在 日本?

When was he in Japan?

B: 從 一九五 líng dàu  
一九五五 他 在  
日本.

He was in Japan from  
1950 to 1955.

A: Hòu 來, 他 到 甚麼  
地方 去了?

Where did he go after-  
wards?

B: 他 到 Dógwo 去了.

He went to Germany.

A: Wèi 甚麼他到 Dégwo  
去了?

Why did he go to Ger-  
many?

B: 他在 Dégwo 有一個  
女 péngyou.

He had a girl friend in  
Germany.

4. A: Lǐ 上 syàu mǎi 了 jǐ 本  
shū 了?

How many books has Colo-  
nel Li bought?

B: 五本了, 可是他 hái  
要 mǎi.

Five books and he is  
going to buy some more.

A: 他 kàn 了 jǐ 本 shū 了?

How many books has he  
read?

B: 三本 bàn 了, 可是 chē 了  
fàn 他 hái 要 kàn.

Three and a half books  
and he is going to  
read some more after  
eating.

5. A: 你 chī fàn 了 麼?

Have you eaten?

B: Chī 了.

Yes, I have.

A: Syàn 在你 yīngdāng dzwò  
甚麼?

What do you have to do  
now?

B: 我 syàn 在 yīngdāng syědz.

I have to write charac-  
ters now.

A: 你 hái yīngdāng dzwò  
甚麼?

What else do you have  
to do?

B: 我 hái yīngdāng gěi 我  
太太 syě - fēng syin.

I have to write a letter  
to my wife.

A: 你 不 gěi 你 péngyou  
syě syin 麼?

Don't you write to your  
friends?

B: 有 shíhou 也 gěi 他們  
syě.

Sometimes I write them,  
too.

A: 你 一個 líbài gěi 你  
太太 syě jīfēng syin?

How many letters do you  
write your wife each  
week?

B: Syě jīfēng.

Several.

V. READINGA. Characters (Nos. 72-79)

72.	工	Gōng	BF:	工夫 (free or leisure time)	工夫	- free or leisure time
73.	夫	fū	BF:	工夫 (free or leisure time)	工夫	- free or leisure time
			BF:	man, husband, wife		
74.	早	zǎo	SV:	early	早上	- morning.
			A:	ago, sometime since	早 fàn	- breakfast
75.	晚	wǎn	BF:	evening	晚上	- evening
			SV:	late	晚 fàn	- supper
76.	昨	zúo	BF:	yesterday	昨天	- yesterday
77.	今	jīn	BF:	present (day, year)	今天	- today
					今年	- this year
78.	明	míng	BF:	tomorrow; clear	明天	- tomorrow
					明年	- next year
79.	年	nián	M:		年年	- every year
					去年	- last year
					年 chīng	- young

B. Sentences

1. 王先生, 今天晚上 nín 有工夫麼?
2. Nín 有甚麼 shǐ?
3. 昨天我父 chín gōi 了 我 jāng hwá 兒。  
我要 chīng 你看一看。
4. 他是甚麼 shǐ gōi nín mái 的?
5. 去年在 Yinggwō mái 的。
6. Nín wāi 甚麼要 gōi 我看?
7. Hwá 兒上 tou 有 Ying 文, 我不 dung,  
swō 以 chīng nín kānkān?
8. 今天晚上不行, 我要 gōi 我 mái  
一 dyān 兒東西去, 明天帶上行  
不行?
9. 好, 我明天早上到 nín 遠兒 來。
10. 那 jāng hwá 兒上 dōu 有甚麼?
11. 有火車, 有水, 有男人, 有女人,  
有大人, nái 有 hái 子。
12. 明天早上我們看了 hwá 兒, 我 jiyòu

Jyāu 你 hwà 兒上的那 jī 個 Yīng 文  
字。

13. 好.. 你 Jyāu 了我那 syē Yīng 文, 我  
們 Jyòu 一 kwài 兒 丟 mǎi 一本 Yīng-  
文 shū, 好不好?

14. 我昨天晚上 ti 你 mǎi 了一本 Yīng-  
文 shū 了。

15. 好. 天天 chr 了早 fàn, 我 Jyòu  
nyàn Yīng 文。

16. Nín 父 chin 在 nǎ 那 兒 麼?

17. 他昨天來的, 明天早上走。

18. Nín 母 chin 也來了麼?

19. 也來了. 他們年年 dōu 來。

### C. Story

今天有人要來 kànkàn 我們 sywésyau. 昨  
天我從早上到晚上, 一天 dōu hōn máng. 一 dyǎn-  
兒 wán 兒的工夫也沒有。



昨天 chī 了早 fàn, Lyánjǎng dwèi 我們 shwō:

「下了 kè 你們 tī 我 dzwò — dyǎn 兒 shr.」 小

王甚麼 dōu 不 dǔng, 他 shwō: 「下了 kè 我要到

chénglǐ 去, 明天 dzwò 行麼?」 Lyánjǎng shwō:

「要是你有 shr, 下了 kè 先上 jyō, 回來 jyōu

到我這兒來. 有人來 kàn 我們 sywésyau 是

一 jyàn 要 jin 的 shr.」 小王 hěn tsūng 明,

hòu 來他沒上 jyō.

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 46-50)

夕 少 父 母 文

B. Radicals

1. 夕 (evening, 36) as in: 夕

2. 小 (small, 42) as in: 小

3. 父 (father, 38) as the word: 父

4. 母 (do not, 80) as in: 母

5. 文 (writing, 67) as the word: 文

LESSON 25

I. Structural Dialogue

1. A: 你們在 Yīngguó  
jù了 jǐ個月?

How many months did you  
stay in England?

B: jù了 五個月。

Five months.

A: 你們在那兒 sywé了  
jǐ個 lǐbài 的  
Yīng文?

For how many weeks did you  
study English?

B: 我們 sywé了 五個  
lǐbài 的 Yīng文。

We studied English for  
five weeks.

A: 你們用甚麼  
shū?

What book did you use?

B: 我們用這本  
shū。

We used this book.

A: 這本 shū 你們 nyàn了  
jǐkè 了?

How many lessons of this  
book have you studied?

B: Nyàn了 十 kè 了。

We have studied ten  
lessons.

A: Dōu hěn nán 麼?

Are all of them very  
difficult?

B: 不太 nán。

Not too difficult.

A: Dì - kè nǐmen niàn le  
jī tiān?

For how many days did you  
study the first lesson?

B: Niàn le yī tiān.

One day.

A: Dì èr kè niàn le jī tiān?

For how many days did you  
study the second  
lesson?

B: Niàn le liǎng tiān.

Two days.

A: Nǐmen huì shuō duō shǎo ge  
Yīng wén zì?

How many English words  
can you write?

B: Wǒmen huì shuō bā shí ge  
Yīng wén zì.

We can write eighty  
English words.

A: Zhè shí wǔ ge zì nǐmen  
shuō le jī tiān?

How many days did you  
spend in learning these  
fifteen words?

B: Zhè shí wǔ ge zì wǒmen  
shuō le liǎng tiān.

We spent two days in  
learning these fifteen  
words.

A: Nà shí wǔ ge zì nǐmen  
shuō le jī tiān?

How many days did you  
spend in learning those  
fifteen words?

B: Shuō le sān tiān.

Three days.

2. A: Bái 小 Jye gōn 他的  
péngyou nyàn Yīng 文  
nyàn 了 多少 shǒu  
le?

For how long have Miss  
Bái and her friend  
studied English?

B: Nyàn 了 五個 líbài 了 .

They have studied for  
five weeks.

A: 他們 在 Yīnggwo jù 了  
多少 shǒu?

For how long did they  
stay in England?

B: jù 了 五個月 .

They stayed for five  
months.

A: Hòu 來 他們 到 那兒  
去了 ?

Where did they go after-  
wards?

B: 到 Fàgwo 去了 .

They went to France.

A: 他們 在 Fàgwo jù 了  
幾天?

For how many days did  
they stay in France?

B: jù 了 四十天 .

For forty days.

A: 他們 sywé 了 多少  
天的 Fàgwo hwà?

For how many days did  
they study French?

B: 他們 sywé 了 三十二天  
的 Fàgwo hwà.

They studied French for  
thirty-two days.

A: 他們 hwéilai 的 shíhou,  
走了 jǐ 天?

How many days did they  
travel on their way  
back?

B: Jyòu 走了三天, yīnwèi 是  
dzwò fēiji 的.

They traveled for only  
three days, because  
they came back by air-  
plane.

3. A: Nín syàn 在 在 lùjūn  
lǐtòu dāng 甚麼?

What is your position in  
in the army?

B: Dāng wánjǎng.

I am a regimental comman-  
der.

A: Dāng 了 jǐ 年 了 ?

For how many years?

B: 三年 了 .

Three years.

A: Tīngshwō nín 父 chīn  
dāng shījǎng, 他  
dāng 了 jǐ 年 了 ?

I heard that your father  
is a division commander.  
For how many years has  
he been a division  
commander?

B: 六年 了 .

Six years.

4. A: Nín dzwò chwan 到 Fràgwo  
去, dzwò 了 jǐ 天?

When you went to France  
by boat, how many days  
did you spend on boat?

B: Dzwò 了 二十三天 .

I spent twenty-three days.

A: Dzwò 火車 到 Dégwo  
去, dzwò 了 几天?

How many days did you  
travel by train to  
Germany?

B: Dzwò 了 三天, yīnwèi  
我 到了 hěn 多  
地方 去 wán 兒 .

I traveled three days be-  
cause I visited many  
places.

A: Nín dzwò fēijī hwéigwó,  
dzwò 了 几天?

How many days did you  
travel by airplane in  
coming back to this  
country?

B: Dzwò 了 三天 .

I traveled for three days.

A: Nín dzwò 火車 到  
Jyòu Jīnshān 來,  
dzwò 了 几天?

How many days did you  
spend on the train when  
you came to San Fran-  
cisco?

B: Dzwò 了 四天 .

I spent four days.

5. A: Jèi 十個 dǐ 你 dōu  
syěle ma?

Have you written these  
ten characters?

B: 我 yǐjīng syěle 七個 le.

I have already written  
seven of them.

L. 25

A: 那 十 ben shū 你 dōu  
nyànle ma?

Have you studied those  
ten books?

B: 我 yǐjīng nyànle  
七 ben le.

I have already read seven  
of them.

A: 你的 táng dōu chīle ma?

Have you eaten all of the  
candies?

B: Yǐjīng chīle - bàn le.

I have eaten half of them.

A: 那 sǎo bào 你 dōu  
kànle ma?

Have you read those news-  
papers?

B: Yǐjīng kànle - bàn le.

I have already read half  
of them.



II. Basic Dialogue

- Bái: Lǐ 先生, nín 早 : Good morning, Mr. Lǐ.
- Lǐ: 早, Bái 小姐. Nín 好麼? Good morning, Miss Bái.  
How are you?
- Bái: 好, syèsye. Fine. Thank you.
- Lǐ: Bái 小姐, nín 在 Fàgwo, nín 是 jù 的 lyǔgwǎn 麼? Did you stay in a hotel when you were in France, Miss Bái?
- Bái: 是 jù 的 lyǔgwǎn. Jù 了 兩個月. Yes, I stayed in a hotel. I stayed two months.
- Lǐ: Nín jù 在 lóu 上 麼? Did you stay upstairs?
- Bái: Dwèi 了, 我 jù 在 lóu 上. That is right. I stayed upstairs.
- Lǐ: Nín 天天 上 lóu, 下 lóu, lèi bulèi? Didn't you get tired going up and down the stairs everyday?
- Bái: 不太 lèi, yīnwèi lóu 不 hěn gāu. I didn't get too tired, because the building was not too high.

Lǐ: Nín gēn nín 的 nǚ péngyou  
dzwò chē 到 你們  
先生 那兒 去 上 sywé  
麼?

Did you and your girl  
friend go by car to  
your teacher's place to  
take lessons?

Bái: Dwèi 了。 在 lyǔgwǎn  
chyántou 上 車， 在  
先生 jù 的 地方  
那兒 下 車。

That is right. We would  
get in the car in front  
of the hotel and get  
off at the place where  
our teacher lived.

Lǐ: 你們 fàng 了 sywé  
jyou hwéi lyǔgwǎn 麼?

Did you go back to your  
hotel after the lessons?

Bái: 有的 shíhou 我們  
不 hwéi lyǔgwǎn, 上 jyē  
去 chē Fàgwō fàn.

Sometimes we would not go  
back to the hotel, but  
would go to the busi-  
ness district in town  
for a French meal.

Lǐ: 你們 也 mǎi 東西  
麼?

Did you go shopping,  
too?

Bái: 那 jyou 不用 shwō 了，  
我們 mǎi 好 syē  
Fàgwō 東西。

Needless to say, we bought  
a lot of French things.

Lǐ: Dōu mǎi 了 甚麼?

What did you buy?

Bái: Mǎi 了 好 jǐ jiàn syīn  
yī shàng, hǎi mǎi 了  
好 syō 女 人 用 的  
東 西。

I bought quite a few  
dresses and a lot of  
items that a lady  
uses.

Lǐ: Fǎ gō 女 人 用 的  
東 西 一 dīng dōu  
hěn 好 ba?

The items that French  
women use should be  
very nice, I presume.

Bái: Dōu 不 tswò. 我 syǎng  
gěi nín 太 太 一 dyǎn-  
兒 女 人 用 的  
東 西; syīng 麼?

They are fine. I am  
thinking of giving your  
wife some lady's  
things. Is it all  
right?

Lǐ: 不 bǐ kèchǐ. Nín mǎi  
gěi 我 太 太 ba.

You are very kind. You  
don't have to do that.  
How about selling them  
to my wife?

Bái: Nín 也 byé kèchǐ.

Please don't stand on  
ceremony.

Lǐ: 好. 我 們 syàn 在  
L kè. Jīn 天 dǎi  
上 dì jǐ kè?

Okay. Let us start our  
lessons. Which is  
the lesson for today?

Bái: Dì 十 五 kè.

The fifteenth lesson.

Lǐ: 這本 shū 一 gùng  
有 二十 kè. 從  
dì 一 kè 到 dì 十五  
kè dōu hěn rúngyì,  
可是 從 dì 十六  
kè 到 dì 二十  
kè dōu hěn nán.

Bái: 我 syǎng dì 一 kè  
到 dì 十五 kè  
也 dōu hěn nán.

Lǐ: Jèike 不 nán, 一 gùng  
jyòu 有 十 jyù hwà.

Bái: 可是 那 syō hwà  
dōu hěn cháng.

Lǐ: 沒有 多少 syīn 的  
dǐ.

There are twenty lessons  
in this book. Lesson  
1 through Lesson 15 are  
all very easy, but Les-  
sons 16 through 20 are  
very difficult.

I think Lesson 1 through  
Lesson 15 are all very  
difficult, too.

This lesson isn't diffi-  
cult. It has only ten  
sentences altogether.

But all the sentences are  
very long.

There aren't many new  
words.

Vocabulary

130. búbì 不必 AV: need not
131. búyòng 不用 AV: no use to
132. byé 別 AV: don't (imperative from búyào)
133. děi 得 AV: must, have to
134. fàngsxywé 放學 VO: get off school
135. hǎujǐ- 好幾 NU: quite a few
136. hǎusyē 好些 NU: a good many; a good deal of
137. -kè 課 M: lessons
138. lyǔgwǎn 旅館 N: hotel; inn
139. shàngchē 上車 VO: board a train or car
140. shàngjyē 上街 VO: go to the shopping district
141. shànglóu 上樓 VO: come or go upstairs
142. shàngsxywé 上學 VO: go to school
143. sxyàchē 下車 VO: get off a train or car
144. sxyàlóu 下樓 VO: come or go downstairs

## 1. Time Spent Expression

Expressions which indicate the period of time during which an action went on, or has been going on up to the present, always follow the main verb of the sentence. Contrast this position with time when expressions always precede the verb.

Tā chyùnyan dzai

Jyòujīnshān jù. (time  
when).

He lived in San Fran-  
cisco last year.

Tā jèi lǎngge ywè dzai

Jyòujīngshān jù. (time  
within which).

He has stayed in San  
Francisco these two  
months.

Tā dzài Jyòujīnshān

jùle lyǎngge ywè le.  
(time spent).

He has been staying in  
San Francisco for two  
months already.

Dzwótyan dzǎushang tā  
láile.

He came yesterday in the  
morning.

Tā láile lyǎngtyān le.

He has been here for two  
days.

Tā chyùnyan dzǒude.

He left last year.

Tā dzǒule yīnyán le.

He has gone for a year.

Tā Shàng ywè dàu Rbēn chyùde.

He went to Japan last month.

Tā chyùle yíge ywè le.

He has gone for a month.

Translate the following:

- 1) Is he busy today?
- 2) He is very busy today.
- 3) He has been very busy for two days.
- 4) Did he go yesterday?
- 5) He has gone for a week.
- 6) Will you please sit down now.
- 7) I have been sitting for a long time.

2. Time-Spent Expression and the Object

In a sentence of subject-verb-object construction, the time-when expression may go before the object or after it, with no difference in meaning. However, when this object is a person or a place, mostly the time-spent expression stands after the object. ("Wǒ jyāule tā sāngē ywè" not "Wǒ jyāule sāngē ywède tā;" "Wǒ dzài Měigwo jùle wǔnyán" not "Wǒ jùle wǔnyānde Měigwo.")

2.1 Before the object

The time-when expression may take -de and stands before the object in a modifying position.

<p>Wǒ dzài nèr nyànle lyǎnggē ywède shūle.</p>	<p>I have been studying there for two months. (lit. studying two months' worth of books.)</p>
<p>Tā hwàle yítýānde hwàr le.</p>	<p>He has been painting for a whole day.</p>



Tā jyāule sānnyānde shū  
le.

He has been teaching for  
three years.

Wǒ dzwòle yige líbàide  
hwöchē.

I have been on the train  
for a week.

Tā sywéle wūnyānde Fàgwo  
hwà.

He has studied French for  
five years.

## 2.2 After the object.

The uninflected verb and its object are first given, then the verb is repeated and is followed by the time-spent expression.

Wǒ dzài zhèr nyànshū,  
nyànle lyǎngge ywè le.

I have been studying here  
for two months. (lit.  
as to my studying here,  
I have studied for two  
months already.)

Tā hwàhwàr, hwàle  
yityān le.

He has been painting for  
a whole day.

Tā jyāushū, jyāule  
sānnyān le.

He has been teaching for  
three years.

Wǒ dzwò hwöchē, dzwòle  
yige líbài le.

I have been on the train  
for a week.

Tā sywé Fàgwo hwà, sywéle  
wūnyān le.

He has studied French  
for five years.

Translate the following using both constructions:

- 1) He has been in the army (dāngbīng) for two years.



- 2) I have attended classes for two days.
- 3) I have stayed in a hotel for a month.
- 4) He has traveled by airplane for two days, and he is tired.
- 5) Miss Wang studied German for two years, but her German is still not good.
- 6) She has been singing for a long time.
- 7) He has been a regimental commander for four years, and now he is a division commander.

IV. Recombination Dialogue

1. A: Nín 去年到甚麼  
地方去了?

Where did you go last  
year?

B: 到 Dégwo 去了。

I went to Germany.

A: 在那兒上的chwán?

Where did you board the  
ship?

B: 在 Jyòujīnshān 上的  
chwán.

I boarded the ship in  
San Francisco.

A: 在那兒下的chwán?

Where did you get off the  
boat?

B: 在 日本 下的 chwán.

I got off the boat in  
Japan.

A: 在那兒上的fēiji?

Where did you board the  
airplane?

B: 在 日本 的 fēijichǎng  
上的 fēiji.

I boarded the airplane  
at an airport in Japan.

A: 在那兒下的fēiji?

Where did you get off the  
airplane?

B: 在 Fàgwó 下的 fēiji.

I got off the airplane in  
France.

A: 在那兒上的車?

Where did you board the train?

B: 在 Fàgwó 上的火車。

I boarded the train in France.

A: 在那兒下的火車?

Where did you get off the train?

B: 在 Dégwo 下的火車。

I got off the train in Germany.

A: Nin wèi 甚麼到 日本 去?

Why did you go to Japan?

B: 在 日本 有一 jiàn hěn yào jīn 的事。

I had a very important matter to attend to in Japan.

A: Nin wèi 甚麼到 Dégwo 去?

Why did you go to Germany?

B: 我到 Dégwo 去 上 sywé。

I went to school in Germany.

A: Nin 上了 ji 個月的 sywé?

For how many months did you attend school?

B: 上了 liǎng 個月的 sywé。

I attended school for two months.

A: 甚麼 shíhòu 上 sywé?

When did you go to school?

L. 25

B: 早上上 sywé.

I went to school in the morning.

A: 甚麼 shíhou fàngsywé?

What time did you get off from school?

B: 晚上 fàngsywó.

I got off from school in the evening.

2. A: Bái 下 shr, 你 byé 走. Hái 沒 下 kè ne.

Corporal Bái, don't go. The class is not over yet.

B: 我要 chōuyān.

I want to smoke.

A: Syàn 在 byé chōuyān. 下 kè, 你可以到 wū 子 wàitou 去 chōuyān.

Don't smoke now. You may go out of this room to smoke after class.

B: 好.

Okay.

A: Bái 下 shr, 你 wèi 甚麼 hwàhwà 兒 nnyàn shū?

Why do you draw pictures but don't study, Corporal Bái?

B: Wǒ 不 syǎng nyànshū.

I don't want to study.

A: Syàn 在 我們 上 kè. 你 dǒi nyànshū byé hwàhwà 兒.

Class is in session now. You should study and not draw pictures.

B: 好。

Okay.

3. A: Nín 到那兒去?

Where are you going?

B: 我 上 jǔ.

I am going to the business district.

A: Nín 去 mǎi 東西 麼?

Are you going shopping?

B: 我 去 mǎi tsài.

I am going to buy groceries.

A: 我 也 要 mǎi  
—dyǎn 兒 東西.

I want to buy something, too.

B: Nín 要 gēn 我 —kwai 兒  
去 麼?

Do you want to go with me?

A: Nín 不用去, 我 去 .

There is no reason for you to go; I will go.

B: Dwèi 了. Nín 可以 tì  
我 mǎi 麼?

That's right. Can you buy them for me?

A: 可以, 我 tì nín mǎi.

Sure, I will buy them for you.

4. A: Hái 子 到 那 兒 去 了?

Where did the child go?

B: 他 上 lǚ 去 了.

He went upstairs.

L. 25

A: 他在 lóu 上 dzwò 甚麼?

What is he doing upstairs?

B: 他在 lóu 上 kànshū.

He is reading upstairs.

A: 他甚麼 shíhòu 下 lóu?

When is he coming downstairs?

B: 他 kàn 了 shū, jìyóu 下 lóu.

He will come downstairs after he finishes reading.

A: 你有要 jǐn 的 shì 麼?

Do you have anything important?

B: 沒有。我 gěi 他 mǎi 了  
— dyǎn 兒 táng.

No, I don't. I bought some candy for him.

V. READINGA. Characters (Nos. 80-87)

- |     |          |       |                         |                            |   |
|-----|----------|-------|-------------------------|----------------------------|---|
| 80. | 錢<br>(钱) | chyán | N: money                | 有錢<br>一毛錢<br>七 kwài 錢      | - rich<br>- ten cents<br>- seven dollars                                    |
| 81. | 買<br>(买) | mǎi   | V: buy                  | 買 shū<br>買賣                | - buy a book<br>- business, trade   |
| 82. | 賣<br>(卖) | mài   | V: sell                 | 賣 shū 的<br>dzwò 買賣         | - book seller<br>- engage in a trade  |
| 83. | 毛        | máo   | M: ten cents<br>N: hair | 一毛錢<br>五毛九                 | - ten cents<br>- \$0.59   |
| 84. | 半        | bàn   | NU: half                | 半 kwài 錢<br>三 kwài 半<br>半天 | - half a dollar<br>- three dollars and a half<br>- half a day, a long while |
| 85. | 百        | bǎi   | NU: hundred             | 九百本<br>六百個人                | - 900 volumes<br>- 600 people   |
| 86. | 千        | chyán | NU: thousand            | 五千人                        | - 5,000 people  |
| 87. | 萬<br>(万) | wàn   | NU: ten-thousand        | 兩萬多<br>四萬萬                 | - 20,000-odd<br>- 400,000,000   |

B. Sentences

1. 你要買甚麼？
2. 買一毛五分錢的 táng. 你賣 táng 麼？
3. 賣 你有錢麼？
4. 今天沒有. 明天 gěi, 行, 不行？
5. 你今天沒有錢 jyǒu byé 買. 你可以  
明天買.
6. 你的 chī 車多少錢買的？
7. 是九百 kwài 錢買的.
8. 錢 dōu gěi 了麼？
9. 沒 dōu gěi. gěi 了一半兒.
10. Syàn 在一個月 gěi 多少錢？
11. 一個月 gěi 五十六 kwài 八毛半.
12. Dǒi gěi jǐ 個月？
13. Dǒi gěi 一年. 我 gěi 了四個月了.
14. 一 gùng gěi 多少錢？
15. 一千二百多 kwài 錢.
16. Bwǒ 以沒錢的人不 nòng 買 chī 車.



17. 這個 fáng 子 賣 jǐ 萬 kwài 錢 ?
18. 賣四萬八千九百 kwài 錢 .
19. Dǒu 先 gěi 多少 ?
20. 先 gěi 一萬 líng 七百 kwài 錢 . 一  
個月 gěi 兩百六十三 kwài 五毛  
半 .
21. 有人 shuō 中 gwo syàn 在有六萬萬五  
千萬人 .
22. 下了 kè , 他 jyòu 上 jys 去了 , 買  
了好 jǐ 十 kwài 錢 的東西 .
23. 你不用 chǐng 他到你 jyā 去 jù , 他  
在 lyǔgwǎn jù 了好 syō 年了 .
24. 去年 毛太太 回 gwo jù 了好 jǐ 個月 ,  
用了兩千七百多 kwài 錢 .
15. 那 wǒi lǎu 先生沒 dzwò gūnggùng chí 車  
好 jǐ 個月了 . 他 shuō 上車下車  
太 lèi .

C. Story

我太太 ài 買東西，可是他不要用太多的錢。昨天晚上他買了一本中文 shū。他先到一個地方去。那兒賣四毛八分錢，他 jyòu 到 byé 的地方去。那個 pù 子賣四毛九分錢。他 jyòu 到 di 三個 pù 子去。那個 pù 子賣五毛二分錢。他 jyòu 回到 di 一個 pù 子去買了那本 shū。我 shwō: 「你要買的不是 jī 萬 jī 千 kwài 錢的東西。用了半天的工夫 jyòu yīnwèi 那兩三分錢，jēn 不 tsūng-明」他 shwō: 「我 syīhwan。」

VI. WRITING

## A. Writing (Characters 50-55)

男 女 地 方 分

## B. Radicals

1. 田 (field, 102) as in: 男

2. 女 (female, 38) as the word: 女

3. 土 (earth, 32 (see Lesson 21) as in: 地

4. 方 (square, 70) as the word: 方

5. 刀 (knife, 18) as in: 分

LESSON 26

I. Structural Dialogue

1. A: (Lǐ太太 在 lóushang, dwèi 他 先生 shwō:) Chǐng 你 上來.  
(Mrs. Lǐ upstairs speaks to her husband:) Will you come up please?
- B: (Lǐ 先生 dzài lóu 下 shwō:) 我 不 néng 上去.  
(Mr. Lǐ says downstairs:) I can't go up.
- A: 你 wèi 甚麼 不 néng 上來?  
Why can't you come up?
- B: 我 不 néng 上去, yīnwèi 我要 在這兒 nyànshū.  
I can't go up, because I want to read here.
- A: 你 甚麼 shíhòu 可以 上來?  
When can you come up?
- B: 我 nyàn 了 shū jù 可以 上去. 你 wèi 甚麼 不 下來?  
I can go up after I have done my reading. Why don't you come down?
- A: 我 syàn 在 不 néng 下去, yīnwèi 我 要 gēn hái 子 wán 兒.  
I can't go down now, because I want to play with the children.
- B: 你 甚麼 shíhòu 可以 下來?  
When can you come down?

A: 我 chī 了 fàn jǐ 可以  
下去，

I can go down after eat-  
ing.

B: Hái 子 也 gēn 你 - kwài 兒  
下來麼？

Will the children come  
down with you?

A: Dwèi 了，他 們 也 gēn 我  
- kwài 兒 下去。

That's right. They will  
go down with me.

2. A: Bái 小 jye 在 lóu 上  
麼？ Chǐng 他 下來，  
行 不行？

Is Miss Bái upstairs?

Can you ask her to come  
down?

B: 他 yǐ jīng hwéi 去了。

She has already gone back.

A: 甚 麼 shí hou hwéi 去的？

When did she go back?

B: 昨 天 hwéi 去的。

She went back yesterday.

A: Gēn shéi - kwài 兒  
hwéi 去的？

With whom did she go  
back?

B: 我 gēn 他 - kwài 兒  
hwéi 去的。

She went back with me.

A: 你 甚 麼 shí hou  
hwéi 來的？

When did you return?

B: 我 今 天 早 上  
hwéi 來的。

I returned this morning.

A: 你 dzwò 甚麼車  
hwéi 來的?

By what car did you come  
back?

B: 我 走 hwéi 來的，  
沒 dzwò 車。

I didn't come back by  
car; I came back on  
foot.

3. A: Dzwò fēiji 的 shǐhòu,  
你 syǐhwan dzwò 在  
甚麼地方?

Where do you like to sit,  
when you are on an  
airplane?

B: Dzwò 在 hòutou.

To sit at the rear.

A: Dzwò chī 車的 shǐhòu,  
你 syǐhwan dzwò 在  
甚麼地方?

Where do you like to sit,  
when you are in a car?

B: Dzwò 在 chyántou.

To sit in front.

A: Dzwò chwán 的 shǐhòu  
你 syǐhwan dzwò 在  
甚麼地方?

Where do you like to sit,  
when you are on a  
boat?

B: 要是 大 chwán, dzwò 在  
chyántou, 要是 小 chwán  
dzwò 在 hòutou.

To sit in front, when I  
am on a big boat, and  
to sit at the rear when  
I am on a small boat.

A: Dzwò 火車的 shǐhòu,  
你 syǐhwan dzwò 在  
甚麼地方?

Where do you like to sit,  
when you are on a train?

L. 26

B: Dzwò 在 chyántou, hòutou,  
hōu 行。

4. A: 你 syīhwan jù 在 甚麼  
地方?

B: Jù 在 syāng 下。

A: Wèi 甚麼?

B: 我 不 syīhwan. jù 在  
chénglītou, yīnwèi  
chénglītou 人 太  
多。

A: 可是 jù 在 chénglītou  
rúngyī 買東西, 你  
shwō dwèi 不 dwèi?

B: 我 太太 ài 買東西,  
swó 以 我 不 ywányī  
jù 在 chénglītou.

A: Jù 在 syāng 下 不 rúngyī  
買 jyōu, dwèi 不 dwèi?

In front or at the rear;  
anywhere will do.

Where do you like to live?

I like to live in the  
country.

Why?

I don't like to live in  
the city, because there  
are too many people in  
the city.

But won't you say it is  
easier to shop if you  
live in the city?

My wife likes to buy  
things; therefore I  
don't like to stay in  
the city.

Is it correct that it is  
not easy to buy wine if  
you live in the country?

B: Jù 在 syāng 下 rúngyì 不 rúngyì  
 買 jyǒu 我 不 jǐdau,  
 yīnwèi 我 不 hējyǒu.

I don't know whether it  
 is easy or not to buy  
 wine when you live in the  
 country, because I don't  
 drink.

5. A: 你 wèi 甚麼 syǐkwan  
 Bái 上 wèi 的 兒子?

Why do you like Captain  
 Bái's son?

B: 他 hěn 好, shwōhwà hěn  
 kèchí.

He is very nice. He  
 talks very politely.

A: 他 syědz syě 的 好 麼?

Does he write well?

B: 也 好, syědz syě 的  
 hěn 好 kàn.

Yes, he also writes very  
 beautifully.

A: 他 nyànshū, nyàn 的 好 麼?

Does he read well?

B: 他 nyànshū, nyàn 的  
 hěn 好.

Yes, he does very well.

A: 他 kāi chī 車 kāi 的  
 好 麼?

Does he drive a car well?

B: 也 kāi 的 hěn 好.

Yes, very well too.

A: 他 syěsyin, syě 的  
 好 不 好?

Does he write letters  
 well or not?

B: 也 syě 的 hěn 好.

Yes, very well too.



L. 26

A: 他 chànggē 兒 chàng 的  
好麼?

Does he sing well?

B: 也 chàng 的 hěn 好 tīng.

Yes, he also sings very well.

A: 他 huàhuà 兒, huà 的  
好麼?

Does he paint well?

B: Huà 的 好 kànji 了 .

He paints wonderfully.

那個 hái 子 hěn  
tsūng 明. 我們 dōu  
syīhwan 他.

that boy is very intelli-  
gent. We all like him.

II. Basic Dialogue

1. Lǐ: Bái 小 jye, nin 在  
Fàgwo 的 shǐhou,  
jù 在那兒?  
Where did you stay when  
you were in France,  
Miss Bái?
- Bái: 先 jù 在 lyǔgwǎnlǐ,  
hòu lái jù 在 péngyou  
jyālǐ.  
At first I stayed in a  
hotel, and later I  
stayed at a friend's  
house.
- Lǐ: Lyǔgwǎn 在 chéng lǐtou  
麼?  
Was the hotel in the  
city?
- Bái: 在 chéng lǐtou. 在  
Feijichǎng Lù.  
Yes, it was. It was on  
Airfield Road.
- Lǐ: Nin 那個 péngyou 的  
jyā 也 在 chéng  
lǐtou 麼?  
Was your friend's house  
also in the city?
- Bái: 不是, 在 chéng wàitou.  
No, it was outside the  
city.
- Lǐ: Nin jù 在 chéng wàitou 的  
shǐhou cháng jìnchéng  
麼?  
Did you often go into the  
city, while you were  
staying outside the  
city?

Bái: 我 chángchang jìnrchéng  
去買東西。

I often went into the  
city to shop.

Lǐ: Nǐ dzěm 麼 jìnrchéng?

How did you go into the  
city?

Bái: 我 jyàu 我 péngyou  
kāi chē 車 sùng 我  
jìnrchéng.

I would ask my friend to  
drive me into the city.

Lǐ: Nín péngyou 也 gēn  
nín 去 買東西麼?

Would your friend accom-  
pany you to shop?

Bái: 他 gēn 我 去, yīnwei  
我的 Fàgwo huà  
不太好。

Yes, she would go with  
me, because my French  
is not very good.

Lǐ: Nín péngyou jyā 的  
fángzi 房子 好 不好?

How is your friend's  
house?

Bái: 好极了。 Kètīng hěn  
大; chwānghu 也 hěn  
多。

It is wonderful. There  
is a very large sitting  
room with very many  
windows.

Lǐ: Děng 一hwěi 兒 我  
要 jìnrchéng, nín 要  
gēn 我 去 麼?

In a short while I am  
going to the city. Do  
you want to go with me?

Bái: 好, děng 我 gwān 上了  
chwānghu, mén,  
jyòu gēn 你 -kwài 兔  
去。

Fine, wait until I close  
the windows and door.

2. A: Jàn 車 走的 hěn  
kwài 麼?

Do tanks travel very  
fast?

B: 大的 走的 màn, 小的  
走的 kwài.

Large ones travel slowly,  
and small ones fast.

A: Jàn 車 上 有 jīgwānchyāng  
麼?

Are there machine guns  
on tanks?

B: Jàn 車 上 有 jīgwānchyāng.

Yes, there are machine  
guns on tanks.

A: Jàn 車 上 的 jīgwānchyāng  
用 甚麼 dàn yào?

What kinds of ammunition  
do the machine guns  
on tanks use?

B: Yòng 甚麼 子 dàn 我  
不 jīdau, chīng 你  
wèn Bái 上 wèi.

I don't know what kind  
of bullets; will you  
please ask Captain  
White?

A: 你 huì kāi jàn 車 麼?

Can you drive a tank?

B: 我 不 huì.

No, I can't.

Vocabulary

145. chwānghu 窗戶 N: window
146. dānyào 彈藥 N: ammunition  
146.1 dǎdàn 子彈 N: bullets
147. děng 等 V: wait, wait for
148. gwān(shang) 關(上) V: close(up) (opp. kāi)
149. jànchē 戰車 N: tank
150. jīgwānchyāng 機關槍 N: machine gun
151. -jile 極了 P: (suffix to SVs, indicating exaggerated degree)
152. jìn 進 V: enter (in)  
152.1 jìnchéng 進城 VO: go into the city or downtown  
152.2 jìnchū 進去 RV: go in  
152.3 jìnlái 進來 RV: come in
153. jiào 叫 CV: tell, order; let  
V: call (someone)
154. kètīng 客廳 N: parlor (guest hall)
155. kuài 快 SV: be fast, quick  
A: quickly, soon
156. lù 路 N: road
157. màn 慢 SV: be slow
158. yīhuǐr 一會兒 MA/N: (in or for) a moment

### III. Grammar Analysis

#### 1. Verbs Compounded With lái and chyù

The verbs lái (come) and chyù (go) may be affixed to certain verbs of motion to form compound verbs. Lái indicates direction toward the speaker and chyù direction away from the speaker.

Chǐng nǐ shànglái.

Please come up.

Wǒ bùnéng shàngchyu;

I can't come up, please  
come down.

chǐng nǐ syàlái.

Chǐng nǐ jìnchyu, chǐng  
tā chūlái.

Go in please, and ask  
him to come out.

Chǐng nǐ hwéilái, chǐng  
tā hwéichyu.

Come back please, and  
ask him to go back.

Translate the following:

- 1) He went into the city and has come back.
- 2) Please drive slowly when you go back.
- 3) Mr. Wáng came in and asked me to close up the windows.
- 4) Mr. Lǐ went in, but he has not come out yet.
- 5) Please come in and sit for a while.

#### 2. Dzài as a Verb Suffix

Dzài has been presented as a main verb and as a co-verb. (See Lesson 11). Dzài is also used as a suffix to certain verbs, such as jàn (stand), dzwò (sit), jù (live), etc.

Used in this way, dzai becomes part of the action itself, and requires an object. (Compare English prepositions which are related to intransitive verbs, such as stand on, sit in, live at, etc.)

Chǐng nǐ jàndzai jèr.

Please stand here.

Lǐ táitai dzwòdzai

Mrs. Lǐ sits in a chair.

yǐdzshang.

Tā bújùdzai lyǔgwǎnli,

He does not stay in a

tā jùdzai wǒ jyāli.

hotel; he is staying at  
my house.

Tā bújùdzai jèr, tā

Where does he live, if he

jùdzai nǎr?

doesn't live here?

Translate the following:

- 1) Where do you want me to sit?
- 2) May I stand here?
- 3) Where did you live when you were in China?
- 4) There are many Chinese in San Francisco. They live in Chinatown.
- 5) At which hotel are you staying?

### 3. Describing Manner of an Action

An adverb modifying the verb may be placed after the verb. In this case, the verb is suffixed with -de. If the verb is a verb-object compound, the verb is repeated and then suffixed with -de.

Tā chàngde hǎu.

He sings well.

Wǒ dzǒude kwài.

I walk fast.

Háidz wárde hǎujíle.

The children had a wonderful time playing.

Tā syědž syěde hěn màn.

He writes very slowly.

Wǒ nyànshū nyànde hěn kwài.

I read very fast.

Wǒ tàitai dzwòfàn dzwòde

My wife cooks well.

hǎu.

Translate the following:

- 1) He drives very fast.
- 2) He talks very fast.
- 3) He teaches very well, and students like him.
- 4) She eats slowly but talks fast.
- 5) That boy speaks English fast, but Chinese slowly.

4. Use of shǐ

Shǐ is used to respond to the request of a superior. It is close to "Yes, sir" in English.

5. Use of -jíle

-jíle (extremely) is used as a suffix attached to a stative verb, indicating exaggerated degree.

hǎujíle

extremely good

mángjíle

extremely busy

kwàijíle

extremely fast



6. Specific Relative Time

To be specific in time relationships, the time element, a descriptive sentence, stands just before the time expression (---de shíhou, ---). This kind of descriptive sentence behaves like movable adverbs.

Wǒ syědzde shíhou

bushwōhwa.

Chànggērde shíhou wǒ

buchī táng.

When I'm writing, I don't

talk.

I don't eat candy while

I am singing.

Translate the following:

- 1) Don't smoke while class is in session.
- 2) Please stand up when the Division Commander comes in.
- 3) We shouldn't talk while others are singing.

IV. Recombination Dialogue

1. A: Syàn 在 你 在 這 兒、  
děng shéi? For whom are you waiting here?
- B: 我 děng 我的 女 péngyou,  
他 今天 dzwò gūnggùng chī 車 friend who is coming  
從 Jyòujīnshān 來。 today by bus from San Francisco.
- A: Gūnggùng chī 車 甚麼  
shíhou 到? When will the bus be here?
- B: 一 hwěi 兒 jyòu 到,  
我 děng 了 半天了。 It will be here in a short while. I have waited a long time.
- A: 他 jīdau 你 在 這 兒  
děng 他 麼? Does she know that you are waiting for her here?
- B: 我 syǎng 他 jīdau. Nín  
在 這 兒 děng shéi? I think that she knows. Who are you waiting for here?
- A: 也 děng 人, 我 děng  
我的 女 péngyou. I am also waiting for a person. I am waiting for my girl friend.

B: 他從那兒來?

Where is she coming from?

A: 也從 Jyòujīnshān 來。

Also from San Francisco.

B: 他 jyàu 甚麼 míng 子?

What is her name?

A: Jyàu Jàu Měi 生

She is Miss Měishēng Jàu.

B: 他 jyàu 你 在這兒  
děng 他 麼?

Did she tell you to wait  
for her here?

A: Dwèi 了。他 jyàu 我  
— dīng dǎi 在這兒  
děng 他。

Right. She told me that  
I must wait for her  
here.

2. A: Chwàngu wàitōu 有甚麼?

What are there outside the  
window?

B: 有 jīgwānchāng, 也有  
大 pào.

There are machine guns and  
big guns.

A: Jīgwānchāng 在那兒?

Where are the machine  
guns?

B: 在 jàn 車 上 tou.

They are on the tanks.

A: 那個 jàn 車 上 tou  
有幾個 jīgwānchāng?

How many machine guns are  
there on that tank?

B: 那個 jàn 車 上 tou  
有兩個 jīgwānchāng.

That tank has two machine  
guns.

A: Jàn 車 lītou 有 danyào  
麼?

Is there ammunition in  
the tank?

B: 一 dīng 有 hěn 多  
jīgwānchēyāng 用的 danyào.

There must be very much  
ammunition for the  
machine guns.

3. A: Nín 太太 甚麼  
shíhòu jìnchéng 的 ?

When did your wife go  
into the city?

B: 今天 早上 jìnchéng 的 .

She went into the city  
this morning.

A: 他是 kāi chē  
去的麼 ?

Did she go by driving?

B: 是 kāi chē 去的,  
他 kāi 的 hěn 好 .

Yes, she went by driving.

She drives very well.

A: 他 kāi 的 hěn màn 麼 ?

Does she drive very  
slowly?

B: 他 kāi 的 也 不 hěn  
màn, 也 不 hěn kuài.

She does not drive very  
slowly nor very fast.

A: Nín 太太 不在 jiā 的  
shíhòu, nín 在那兒  
chī 中 fàn?

When your wife isn't home,  
where do you have your  
lunch?

B: 我太太不在家的时候，我在饭馆里吃饭。

When my wife isn't home, I eat at the restaurant.

A: 你在饭馆的时候喝茶吗？

Do you drink when you have your lunch?

B: 不，我晚饭的时候喝茶。

No, but I drink when I have my supper.

4. A: 白大尉，你站起来。

Colonel Jāng: Stand up, David Bái.

B: 是，江上校。

Bái: Yes, sir, Colonel Jāng.

A: 你到这里来，站在桌子前面。

Come here and stand in front of this table.

B: 是。

Yes, sir.

A: 在下士，你也站起来。

Corporal Wáng, stand up also.

C: 是。

Yes, sir.

A: 你站在屋子外面。

You stand outside the room.

C: 是。

Yes, sir.

A: Lǐ 中 shì, 你 byé  
dzwò 在那兒.

Sergeant Lǐ. Don't sit  
there.

D: 是. 我可以 dzwò 在  
那兒?

Yes sir, Where can I  
sit?

A: 你 可以 dzwò 在 Bái  
大 wèi 的 地方.

You can sit at David  
Bái's place.

D: 一 hwéi 兒 Bái 大 wèi  
hwéi 來的 shíhòu, 他  
dzwò 在那兒?

Where will David Bái  
sit when he comes  
back in a little while?

A: 他 可以 dzwò 在 王  
下 shì 那兒.

He can sit at Corporal  
Wáng's place.

D: 一 hwéi 兒 王 下 shì hwéi 來的  
shíhòu, 他 dzwò 在那兒?

Where will Corporal  
Wáng sit when he comes  
back in a little  
while?

A: 他 可以 dzwò 在  
我 這兒.

He can sit at my place.

D: 你 dzwò 在那兒?

Where will you sit?

A: 我 dzwò 在 你 那兒.

I can sit at your place.

A. Review (Lessons 16-25)

一 二 三 四 五 六 七 八 九 十  
 月 個 人 大 夫 我 你 他 們 是  
 有 沒 也 上 下 兩 中 的 不 小  
 在 了 王 先 生 日 本 火 車 水  
 太 可 以 回 子 多 少 父 母 文  
 男 女 地 方 分 從 這 到 那 兒  
 來 去 走 要 用 甚 麼 好 東 西  
 行 工 夫 早 晚 昨 今 明 年 錢  
 買 費 毛 半 百 千 萬

B. Characters (Nos. 88-95)

- |     |          |      |                                   |          |   |
|-----|----------|------|-----------------------------------|----------|---|
| 88. | 作<br>做   | dzwò | V: do, make<br>act; act as        | 作事       | - do things,<br>work                          |
|     |          |      |                                   | 作 fàn    | - cook (food)                                 |
|     |          |      |                                   | 作買賣的     | - businessman                                 |
| 89. | 事        | shì  | N: business                       | 作事       | - do things,<br>work                          |
|     |          |      |                                   | 事 ching  | - thing (in the<br>sense of event,<br>affair) |
| 90. | 寫<br>(写) | syě  | V: write                          | 寫字       | - write (char-<br>acters or<br>words)         |
|     |          |      |                                   | 寫 syin   | - write a<br>letter                           |
| 91. | 字        | dž   | N: word<br>(written<br>character) | 兩千字      | - 2,000 char-<br>acters                       |
|     |          |      |                                   | 中 gwo 字  | - Chinese<br>characters                       |
| 92. | 說        | shwō | V: speak, say                     | 說話       | - talk  |
|     |          |      |                                   | 說 gù 事   | - tell a story                                |
|     |          |      |                                   | ting 說   | - hear it said                                |
| 93. | 話        | hwà  | N: speech,<br>language            | 中 gwo 話  | - Chinese<br>language                         |
|     |          |      |                                   | ài 說話    | - love to talk                                |
|     |          |      |                                   | 日本話      | - Japanese                                    |
|     |          |      |                                   | Fràgwo 話 | - French                                      |



L. 26

94. 念 nyàn V: study, read aloud  
 念書 - to study  
 不念書 - does not study
95. 書 shū N: book  
 買書 - buy books  
 中 gwo 書 - Chinese books

C. Sentences

1. 你說說我們 wèi 甚麼念書?
2. 我不 jīdau 念書, 有甚麼用.
3. 你們兩個人 dōu 不 dǔng 念書 dzwèi 有用.
4. 你是不是 syǎng 明年到 中 gwo 去作買賣?
5. Dwèi 了.
6. 你 syǎng 做買賣. 你有多少錢?
7. 三百五十萬八千 kwai 錢 gòu 不 gòu?
8. Gòu 了. 可是你 dǒi sywó: 寫字.
9. Dǒi hwèi 寫多少字?
10. 兩千字. hái dǒi sywó 說 中 gwo 話.
11. Gōn shól sywó 說 中 gwo 話?

12. Gōn 王先生 sywó 說中 gwo 話. yInwòi

他 jyāu 書 jyāu 的好 jí 了.

13. 那個 王先生?

14. 在火車 jàn 做事的那個 王先生.

15. 他甚麼 shíhou 在火車 jàn 做事?

甚麼 shíhou jyāu 書?

16. 他早上在火車 jàn 做事, 晚上 jyāu-  
書.

17. 在甚麼地方 jyāu 書?

18. 在 hǎi jyūn 的那個 sywésyàn jyāu 書.

19. 他 jōn máng.

20. Swó 以我們也 dōi máng, 天天寫字說話.

念書有的 shíhou hái dōi 作事.

#### D. Story

我在這兒念書念了一個多月了. 從我-  
們 jù 的地方走 lǚ 到上 kò 的大 lóu 去. > hwǒi-  
兒 jyòu 到了. 我念的是中文字. 我們天天

說中 gwo 話，寫中 gwo 字，也念中 文書 Jyau  
 我寫字的是一 wèi 女先生，Jyau 我念書說  
 話的 dōu 是男先生，他們 dōu 是從中 gwo 來  
 的。有人說 syàn 在中 gwo 有六萬萬五千萬  
 人。我 syiwang 他們 dōu dǔng 我說的中 gwo 話。

Sywésyau 有 jī 個賣東西的地方。我們可  
 以在那兒買東西。Wàitou 賣八毛錢的東西  
 那兒 jyòu 賣七毛五分錢。一百 kwài 錢的  
 東西 jyòu 賣 jī 十 kwài。

Lìbài 六, Libài 日有 shíhou 我們 děi tǐ sywésyau  
 作一 dyǎn 兒事，可是 jyòu 作半天，我們  
 hái 有 hěn 多工夫念書

VI. WRITING

## A. Writing (Characters 56-60)

從 這 兒 到 那

## B. Radicals

1. 彳 (to pace, 60) as in: 從
2. 辵 (stop & go, 162) as in: 這
3. 儿 (man(going), 10) (see Lesson 21) as in: 兒
4. 刀 (knife, 18) (same as 刀, 18; see Lesson 25) as in:  
到
5. 阝 (city, 163) as in: 那

Sixty Common Chinese Radicals - "Man" Group  
( continued )

Radical Number	Name	Radical	English Meaning	Examples
64	t'í-shǒu-erh	扌, 手	Hand	把 拿 拜 才
104	píng-ch'ǎ-erh	疒	Sickness	病 疼 痢
109	mù	目 四	Eye	睡 看 直 相 眾
128	ěr	耳 耳	Ear	聽 聰 聲
130	jòu-yùèh-erh	月 肉	Flesh	胖 胃
157	tsú	足 足	Foot	跑 跟 躉

1. Exercise: Find from dictionary Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning		Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
招			症		
聖			肚		
胡			療		
跌			蹙		
疔			眨		
肯			攀		

2. Home work: Find from dictionary Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning		Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
播			跛		
疾			睜		
肝			耶		
育			畢		
職			搭		
竊			踏		

LESSON 27

I. Structural Dialogue

1. A: 他甚麼 shíhou 'hwéi 到  
他 jyā 去的? When did he return home?

B: 他昨天晚上 hwéi 到  
他 jyā 去的。 He returned home last evening.

A: Wèi 甚麼? Why?

B: 他 syǎng 念書。 He wanted to read.

A: 他念到 dìjǐkè 了?  
Which lesson has he covered in reading?

B: 念到 dì 二十七 kè 了。  
He has covered Lesson 27 in reading.

A: 寫字, 寫到 dìjǐ 個字  
了?  
Which character has he covered in writing?

B: 寫到 dì 三個字了。  
He has covered the third character.

A: 他 kàn 書, kàn 到 dìjǐjyù  
話了?  
Which sentence has he covered in reading?

B: Dì 十五 jyù 話了。  
The fifteenth sentence.

2. A: 他 hái 不在 jyā 麼? Isn't he at home yet?

B: 不在 jyā, pǎu 到 wàitou  
去 wán 兒 去了。

No, he isn't. He ran  
out to play.

A: 他 母 chín 不在 jyā 麼?

Isn't his mother at  
home?

B: 不在 jyā, 他 走到 jyē 上  
去 買 tsài 去了。

No, she isn't. She  
walked to town to buy  
groceries.

A: wèi 甚麼 他 dǎi 走到  
jyē 上 chyù?

Why does she have to  
walk to town?

B: Yīnwèi 他 不 hwèi kāi 車。

Because she doesn't  
know how to drive.

A: 小 hái 子 wèi 甚麼 pǎu 到  
wàitou 去 wán 兒?

Why do children run out  
to play?

B: 小 hái 子 dōu 說:  
"wán 兒 dzwèi 要 jīn."

Children say, "To play  
is most important."

3. A: Bái 大 wèi, kwài jànchǐ 來!

Stand up immediately,  
David Bái!

B: 是。Lyánjǎng.

Yes sir, Company comman-  
der.

A: 走到 chyántou 去!

Go to the front!

B: 是。Lyánjǎng.

Yes sir, Company comman-  
der.



A: Gwān 上 mén, kǎikāi 那個  
chwānghu!

Close the door, and open  
that window!

B: 是 . Lyánjǎng.

Yes sir, Company comman-  
der.

A: Byé dzwò 下!

Don't sit down!

B: 是 . Lyánjǎng.

Yes sir, Company comman-  
der.

A: Byé kàn 書!

Don't look at the book!

B: 是 . Lyánjǎng.

Yes sir, Company comman-  
der.

A: 寫 三個 中 gwo 字!

Write three Chinese char-  
acters.

B: 是 . Lyánjǎng.

Yes sir, Company comman-  
der.

A: Hwéi 到 你 那兒 去!

Go back to your place!

B: 是 . Lyánjǎng.

Yes sir, Company comman-  
der.

A: Dzwò 下!

Sit down!

B: 是 . Lyánjǎng.

Yes sir, Company comman-  
der.

L. 27

4. A: LI 下 shǔ, 你 jānchǎi 來  
ba!

Stand up Corporal Li!

B: 好. 王 中 wèi.

All right, First Lieutenant  
Wáng.

A: 我們 -kwài 鬼 走到  
chyántou 去 ba!

Let us go to the front!

B: 好. Nín 在 chyántou  
走 ba! 我 在 hòutou  
走.

Fine. Go ahead and I  
will follow you.

A: 好. 你 gwān 上 chwānghu  
ba!

Fine. Please close the  
window!

B: Nín kāikāi 那個 mén ba!

Please open that door!

A: 我們 -kwài 鬼 念 這 kè  
書 ba!

Let us read this lesson  
together!

B: Chǐng nín 念 dì - jǜ ba!

Read the first sentence  
please!

A: 我 不 hwèi 念 dì - jǜ,  
chǐng 你 先 念 ba!

I can't read the first  
sentence. You read  
first, please!

B: 那 不要 jǐn, chǐng nín  
念 dì 二 jǜ ba!

That doesn't matter.

You read the second  
sentence please!

A: 我也不能念第二句，  
我們寫中字。

I can't read the second sentence either. Let us write Chinese characters!

B: 你寫第七個字。

You write the seventh character please!

A: 我寫第七個，  
你寫第八個。

I write the seventh and you write the eighth please!

B: 我(也)不能，  
我們去。

I can't write either. Let us go back!

A: 你走的太快，  
你走慢一點兒。

You walk too fast; please walk a little slower!

B: 我走的不快，  
是你走的太慢。

I am not walking fast; it is you who walks too slow.

5. A: 上課的時候說  
中文麼?

Do you have to speak Chinese when you are in class?

B: 上課的時候不能  
不說中文。

We have to speak Chinese when we are in class.

A: 為什麼不能不說  
中文?

Why do you have to speak Chinese?

B: 到 中 gwo 去 作事  
不 néng 不 dǔng 中文.

If you go to China to  
work, you have to un-  
derstand Chinese.

A: 你 不 可 以 不 去 麼?

Can't you refuse to go?

B: Měigwo Lújyūn jǐwǒ 我  
去, 我 不 néng 不 去.

If the United States  
Army tells me to go,  
I have to go.

II. Basic Dialogue

1. Bái: Lǐ 先生; nín You have come, Mr. Lǐ.  
 來了. Chǐng jìn. Come in please. Let  
 我們可以 tán us chat.  
 -hwǒi 兒.

Lǐ: Bái 小姐, nín 好 How are you Miss Bái?  
 麼? Nín 不 chūmén You are not going out,  
 麼? are you?

Bái: 我 早上 chū 去了; I went out this morning,  
 syàn 在 不 chūmén. so I am not going out  
 now.

Lǐ: Nín 在 shàngwō 的 shíhòu, Where did you live when  
 nín jù 在那兒? you were in China?

Bái: 我 jù 在 Běipíng. I lived in Běipíng. My  
 一九四九 我們 jiā family moved to For-  
 bān 到 Táiwān 去了. mosa in 1949.

Lǐ: Nín 不 syǐhwán Běipíng Don't you like Běipíng?  
 麼?

Bái: 我 hǎn syǐhwán Běipíng. I like Běipíng very much.  
Běipíng 是 一個 hǎn Běipíng is a very in-  
 有 yǐsz 的 地方. teresting place.

Lǐ: Nín wǒi 甚麼 要 bān jiā nǐ? Why did you want to move?

- Bái: 我父 chin 要到 Táiwān 去 jyāu 書, syó 以 我們 bānjyā 了。 We moved because my father wanted to go to Formosa to teach.
- Lǐ: Nín syǐhwan jù 在 Táiwān 麼? Do you like to live in Formosa?
- Bái: Dwèi 了! Táiwān 好 jí 了。 Yes. Formosa is wonderful.
- Lǐ: 我 hǒn syǐhwan gēn nín tán 話; 可是 我 syàn 在 dǒi 到 jyō 上 去。 I like to chat with you very much, but now I have to go to town.
- Bái: Nín mǎn ~~走~~, dzài jyàn. Walk slowly (be careful on your way)! Goodbye.
2. A: Lù jyūn lǐtou dōu 有 甚麼 pào? What artillery pieces does the army have?
- B: 有 gāushòpào, 也有 jàn fángpào. There are antiaircraft guns and antitank guns.
- A: 甚麼 shíhou 用 gāushòpào? When are antiaircraft guns used?
- B: Dǎ fēiji 的 shíhou 用 gāushòpào. Antiaircraft guns are used to fight aircraft.
- A: ~~那~~ shíhou 用 jàn fángpào 不行 麼? Can't antitank guns be used for that purpose?

B: 不行。

No, they can't.

A: 甚麼 'shíhou 用 jànfángpào?

When are antitank guns used?

B: Dǎ jàn 車 的 shíhou 用 jànfángpào.

Antitank guns are used to fight tanks.

A: 那 shíhou 用 gāushèpào 不行麼?

Can't antiaircraft guns be used for that purpose?

B: 不行。

No, they can't.

A: Gāushèpào gōn jànfángpào 用 甚麼 pàudàn?

What shells do antiaircraft guns and antitank guns use?

B: Gāushèpào 用 gāushèpào 的 pàudàn. Jànfángpào 用 jànfángpào 的 pàudàn.

Antiaircraft guns use antiaircraft shells and antitank guns use antitank shells.

Vocabulary

159. bān 搬 V: move (change residence or heavier articles)
160. bānjiā 搬家 VO: move one's residence
161. Běipíng 北平 N: Peiping
162. bùnéng bù- 不能不 AV: cannot but
163. chū 出 V: exit, go out, come out
164. chūmén 出門 VO: go out (of the house)
165. dǎ 打 V: fight; hit
166. duìbùqǐ 對不起 IE: excuse me! I'm sorry!
167. gāoshèpào 高射炮 N: antiaircraft gun
168. zhàn fáng pào 戰防炮 N: antitank gun
169. pǎo 跑 V: run
170. pàodàn 炮彈 N: shell
171. Táiwān 台灣 N: Taiwan (Formosa)
172. tán 談 V: converse; chat about
173. tánhuà 談話 VO: carry on conversation



### III. Grammar Analysis

#### 1. Dàu as a Verb Suffix

Dàu (to) was introduced as a co-verb in Lesson 12; as a verb in Lesson 21. Dàu also is used as a suffix to certain verbs of motion; such as hwéi (return), bān (move), etc.

The resulting compounds require positional nouns as objects. Lái and chyù often follow these positional nouns as directional particles:

hwéidàu	return to
bāndàu	move to
dzǒudàu	walk to
pǎudàu	run to
nyàndàu	study up to
kàndàu	read up to
syědàu	write up to

Nín yàu bāndàu nǎr chyù?      Where are you moving to?

Wǒ yàu bāndàu Táiwan chyù.      I am moving to Formosa.

Tā nyàndàu nǎr lé?      Up to where has he read?

Tā nyàndàu dīshíkò lé.      He has read up to Lesson

10.

#### 2. Expressing Manner in Commands

In giving an order or a command, the unqualified adverb of manner stands immediately before the verb. Yidyār or

just dyār (a little) is often added to the adverb to express a greater or less degree. These qualified expressions of manner may stand just before or just after the verb.

Kwài syálai!	Hurry and come down!
Kwài lái syědž.	Come quickly and write!
Màn yidyār shwō.	Say it a little slower!
Shwō màn dyār.	Say it a little slower!

### 3. Mild Commands or Requests

Chǐng (please) may be added to a command or an order, and it stands at the beginning of the sentence; or ba may be added to the end of the sentence. This will change the command or order to a mild command, request or suggestion.

Nǐ shwō ba.	You may say it.
Wǒmen dzōu ba.	Let us go.
Chǐng nǐ màn yidyār pǎu.	Please run a little slower.
Chǐng nǐ hwóichyù ba.	Please go back.

Translate the following:

- 1) Let us go out and buy some groceries.
- 2) Please come in and have a chat.
- 3) Let us hurry and go upstairs; they are waiting for us there.
- 4) Chinese characters are difficult to write, therefore, please write them a little slower.

5) You talk too fast and I can't understand. Please talk a little slower.

6) Go out to play. There are too many people in the room.

#### 4. The Double Negative

Two negatives amount to an affirmative in a sense, but the sentence mood is much more impressive.

bùnéng bùshwō

cannot but speak up  
(have to tell)

bùnéng búchyù

cannot but go  
(have to go)

bùnéng búdzwò

cannot but do it  
(have to do)

bùshwō bùsyíng

have to tell  
(lit: Not telling won't do)

búchyù bùsyíng

have to go

búdzwò bùsyíng

have to do

a. In a simple sentence, the element to be emphasized is put between the two negative particles:

méi(you) rén bùshwō

everybody speaks up

méi(you) rén búchyù

everybody goes

méi(you) rén búdzwò

everybody does it

méi(you) yítsè bùlái

come every time

b. Negatives are used separately in the two clauses of a composite sentence, and the clauses are connected by the word; Jyòu:

Bùsīwé Jūnggwo huà jǐou,  
bùnéng dǎng Jūnggwo rén  
shwōhwàde yīsz.

If one doesn't learn  
the Chinese language;  
then he will not be  
able to understand  
Chinese.

Yàushr wōmen méiyōu dǎnyào  
wōmen jǐou méiyōu syī-  
wàngle.

If we don't have ammuni-  
tion, then we are  
hopeless.

IV. Recombination Dialogue

1. A: Nín 是 甚麼 shíhòu bānjyā 的? When did you move?
- B: 是 昨天 bān 的. I moved yesterday.
- A: Wèi 甚麼 nín 要 bānjyā? Why did you want to move?
- B: Yīnwèi 我 太太 syǎng bān, I had to move because  
swó 以 我 dǒi bān. my wife wanted to.
- A: 要是 nín 不 ywànyì bānjyā, Do you have to move if  
nín 也 dǒi bān 麼? you aren't willing to move?
- B: Dwèi 了. 我 太太 說 "Bānjyā." 我們 jyòu dǒi bān. That is right. When my wife says, "Move!", we have to move.
- A: 要是 nín 太太 說 "Kwài dyǎn 兇 bān!", nín jyòu kwài dyǎn 兇 bān 麼? If your wife says, "Move quickly," will you move quickly?
- B: Dwèi 了. 我 不 néng 不 kwài dyǎn 兇 bān. 太太 說 的 話 要 jīnjì 了. That is right. I cannot help but move quickly. My wife's word is extraordinarily important.

2. A: 王先生，你在 屋子  
lǐtōu 作甚麼？

What are you doing in  
the room, Mr. Wáng?

B: Kàn 書. 你在 wàitōu  
作甚麼？

Reading. What are you  
doing outside?

A: Bān jwō 子, 你 chū 來  
kànkàn.

Moving a table. Come  
out and take a look.

B: 我 不 chū 去. 你 jìn 來.

I am not going out. You  
come in.

A: 我 不 jìn 去. Chǐng 你  
— dīng chū 來 gōn 我  
— kwài 兒 bān jwō 子.

I am not going in. Come  
out and move the table  
with me by all means.

B: Bān 到 那兒 去?

To move it where?

A: Bān 到 wū 子 lǐtōu 去.

Move it into the room.

B: 不 bān 不行 麼?

Does it have to be  
moved?

A: 不 néng 辦 bān.

It has to be moved.

B: 好.

Okay.

3. A: Dwòl 不 chǐ, nín 有 yān  
麼?

Excuse me, do you have a  
cigarette?

B: Dwòl 不 chǐ, 我 沒有.  
Jāng 下 shǐ 有.

Sorry, I don't have any.  
Corporal Jāng has some.

A: Jāng 下 shì, nín 有 yān  
麼? 我 syǎng chōuyān.

Do you have a cigarette,  
Corporal Jāng? I wish  
to smoke.

C: Dwèi 不 chǐ, 我 沒有,  
yīnwèi 我 不 hwèi  
chōuyān. Lǐ 小 jye 有.

Sorry, I don't, because  
I don't know how to  
smoke. Miss Lǐ has  
some.

A: Dwèi 不 chǐ, Lǐ 小 jye,  
nín 有 yān 麼?

Excuse me, Miss Lǐ. Do  
you have a cigarette?

D: Dwèi 不 chǐ, 我的 yān  
不多 我 hái 要 chōu ne.  
Jàu Shàngshì 有.

Sorry, I don't have many  
cigarettes left and I  
still want to smoke  
them. Master Sergeant  
Jàu has some.

4. A: 小 dìdi, 小 mèimoi, 你們  
kwài -dyǎn 兒 chū 來!

Little brother, little  
sister, come out quickly.

B: 母 chin, 你 wài 甚麼 要  
我們 kwài -dyǎn 兒  
chū 來?

Mother, why do you want  
us to come out quickly.

A: 你們 chū 來 gōn 王 Twánjǎng  
tán 話. 他 從 Tái wān  
hwó 來了.

Come out and talk with  
Regiment Commander  
Wáng. He has come  
back from Formosa.

B: Chǐng 你們 jīn 來 ba.

我 dǎi 寫字,

mèimei dǎi 念書.

Will you please come in.

I have to write, and

little sister has to

read.

A: 你 寫到 dì jī 個 字 了 ？

Which character have you

written up to?

B: 我 寫到 dì jiǔ 個 字

了, 小 mèimei 念到

dì wǔ kè 書 了 .

I have written up to the

ninth character, and

little sister has read

to Lesson 5.



V. READINGA. Characters (Nos. 96-103)

96. 前 chyán PW: front;  
- former 前頭 - front
97. 後 hòu PW: back 後頭 - back  
(后) 後來 - afterwards,  
and then
98. 裡 lì PW: inside 裡頭 - inside  
裏 屋子裡 - inside the  
(里) cháng 裡頭 - inside the  
city
99. 外 wài PW: outside 外頭 - outside  
sywésyau 外頭 - outside the  
school
100. 頭 tóu P: (general  
(夫) localizer  
suffix)  
N: head 上頭 - top, above  
下頭 - below, bottom
101. 所 swǒ BF: 所以  
(therefore) 所以 - therefore
102. 坐 dzwò V: ride on,  
sit 坐下 - sit down  
CV: go by 坐車 - ride a vehicle  
坐 chwan - ride on a  
boat  
坐車去 - go by train  
or bus  
坐 feiji - ride on a  
plane

103. 位 wèi

M: (polite  
for  
persons)

這位先生

- this gentle-  
man

那位太太

- that lady  
(married)B. Sentences

1. 王上 wèi 要 bānjyā, 可是這位王上 wèi 的太太上月坐 ohwán 到中 gwo 念書去了, 所以 bānjyā 的 shfhou 王上 wèi mángji- 了。

2. Di 二天我去 kàn 他. Fáng 子前頭, 後頭, 裡頭, 外頭 dōu 是東西.

3. 王上 wèi dwèi 我說: 「Dwèi 不 ohī, 今天你 dǎi ti 我作一 dyǎn 兒事. 你 kwài jin 來。」

4. 我 jyòu 走到 kètīng 裡去了. 他說: 「ohīng 坐。」

5. 我 kàn 了 kàn, kètīng 前頭, 後頭一個 yī- 子也沒有. 我說: 「這兒沒有 yī 子. 你要我坐在那兒 ne?」

6. 他說：「你 jyòu 坐在 jwō 椅子上 ba, 可是 jwō 椅子上頭 是東西，大的小的多 ji 了。」

7. 後來我們 jyòu. jàn 在 kōtīng 前頭 tán- 話。

8. Tán 了一 hwōi 光話，我 wòn 他要 chāwǎn, syáng hō dyǎn 兒水，他不 jīdau chāwǎn 在那兒。

9. 他說：「Syán 在我 jīdau 沒有太太不行，太太 hōn 要 jīn。」

### C. Story

昨天 王 先生父母到 fàngwǎn 兒去 chīfàn. 王 lǎu 太太在前頭走，王 lǎu 先生在後頭走。他們從外頭 kàn 了 kàn 那個 fàngwǎn 兒裡頭沒有多少人，所以他們 jyòu 走 jìn 去 chīfàn. fàngwǎn 兒裡 的今 dwòl 他們說：「二位 chīng 坐，chīng 坐。」

他們兩位 dōu 坐下了。

Fàngwǎn 兒裡的人 wèn 他們要甚麼。 王

lǎu 太太說：「我要 yú。」 王 (lǎu 先生說：

「我甚麼也不要。」

後來, yú 來了, 王 lǎu 太太沒 chī, 可是

王 lǎu 先生 chī 了。

他們要走的 shíhòu, fàngwǎn 兒裡的人要

王 lǎu 先生 gěi 錢。 王 lǎu 先生說：「yú,

不是我要的, 我不 néng gěi 錢。」

Fàngwǎn 兒裡的人 jiù duì 王 lǎu 太太說：

「Chǐng nín gěi 錢。」 王 lǎu 太太說：「yú, 我

沒 chī, 所以我不 néng gěi 錢。」

VI. WRITING

## A. Writing (Characters 61-65)

來 去 走 要 用

## B. Radicals

1. 人 (man, 9) as in: 來

2. 厶 (private, 28) as in: 去

3. 走 (walk, 156) as the word: 走

4. 西 (cover, 146) as in: 要

5. 用 (use, 101) as the word: 用

VOCABULARY INDEX

<u>B</u>		<u>LESSON</u>
-ba	P: (sentence suffix implying probability)	21
-ba	P: (sentence suffix indicating a request)	27
-bǎi	NU: hundred	16
bān	V: move (change residence or move heavier articles)	27
bānjiā	VO: move one's residence	27
bàn-, -bàn	NU: half	16
bàntyān	MA/N: a long while, half day	24
Běipíng	N: Peiping	27
búbi	AV: need not	25
bùnénghù	AV: cannot but	27
bútsuō	SV: be not bad, quite good	23
búyàujīn	IE: never mind, that's nothing	21
bùyídìng	A: uncertain, not necessarily	18
búyòng	AV: no use to	25
byè	AV: don't (imperative from <u>búyào</u> )	25
byéde	N: other, another	20
byéren	N: other people	20

C

chādz	N: fork	22
chōjān	N: station (bus or train)	21
chǐng dzwòt	IE: please sit down!	18
chū	V: exit, go out, come out	27
chūmén	VO: go out (of the house)	22
chúfáng	N: kitchen	30
chwānghu	N: window	26
-chīyān	NU: thousand	16
chyunyán	MA/N: last year	21

D

dǎ	V: fight, hit	27
dàren	N: adult, grown-up	17
dàpào	N: big gun, artillery piece	22
dānyào	N: ammunition	26
dāng	V: to be a, become, (act as soldier, officer, teacher, etc)	20
dāng bīng	VO: join the army	20
dāudz	N: knife	22

dàu	V: arrive at, reach	21
Déwén	N: German (language)	19
děi	AV: must, have to	25
děng	V: wait, wait for	26
dī-	P: (ordinalizing prefix to numbers)	21
dīfang	N: place	18
dījī	SP: which? (of series)	21
dwèi	SV: be right, correct	16
dwèi	CV: towards (facing), to	23
dwèibuchǐ	IE: excuse me! I'm sorry!	27
dwèille	IE: that's right! (indicates agreement)	22
dǔdàn	N: bullets	26
dzǎufàn	N: breakfast (early meal)	19
dzǒu	V: walk; go, leave	19
dzwèi	A: the most, -est	18
dzwótyan	MA/N: yesterday	19
dzwòsya	V: sit down	18

## E

Egwo	N: Russia	23
érdz	N: son	17

## F

Fàwén	N: French (language)	22
fàngsywé	VO: get off school	25
fēn	M: cent	17
-fēng	M: measure for letters	23
fùmǔ	N: parents	17

## G

gāushèpào	N: anti-aircraft gun	27
gěi	CV: for, to (for benefit of)	20
gòu	SV: be sufficient	16
gòule	IE: that'll be enough	24
gùshr	N: story	20
gūngfu	N: free or leisure time	23
gwān (shang)	V: close(up) (opp. <u>kāi</u> )	26
gwó	N: country, nation	16

H

háì	A:	still, yet, again	20
hǎìjyūn	N:	navy	20
hǎujī-	NU:	quite a few	25
hǎusyē	NU:	a good many; a good deal of	25
hòulái	MA:	afterwards, and then	24
hwá	V:	draw or paint	18
-hwéi	M:	a time; occurrence	30
hwéi	V:	return (to)	24
hwéigwó	VO:	return to one's native country	24
hwéijyā	VO:	return home	24
hwéilai	V:	come back, return here	19

J

jàn	V:	stand	18
jànchē	N:	tank	26
jànchilai	V:	stand up	18
jànfángpào	N:	anti-tank gun	27
jǎu	V:	look or hunt for	24
jēn	A:	truly, really	17
jīgwānchyāng	N:	machine gun	26
-jīle	P:	(suffix to SVs, indicating exaggerated degree)	26
jīnnyān	MA/N:	this year	21
jīn	V:	enter (in)	26
jīnchéng	VO:	go into the city or downtown	26
jīnchyu	RV:	go in	26
jīnlai	RV:	come in	26
-jīf	M:	measure for rifle, pistol, carbine, pencil, cigarette, etc.	22
jīfdau	V:	know, know of or about	16
jù	V:	live or stay in or at	24
jūngfàn	N:	lunch (middle meal)	19
Jūngwén	N:	Chinese (language)	19
jyàu	CV:	tell, order; let	26
jyàu	V:	call (someone)	26
jyòu	A:	only, just	16
jyòu	A:	then (introduces subsequent actions)	24
-jyù	M:	measure for <u>hwá</u> , spoken	23
jyüdz	N:	sentence	23
jyüntwán	N:	army (army unit)	23
jyüntwánjǎng	N:	army commander	23



K

kéyi	AV: may, can, be permitted to	17
kè	M: lessons	25
kèchǐ	SV: be polite, stand on ceremony	17
kètīng	N: parlor (guest hall)	26
kūngjūn	N: air force	23
kwài	SV: be fast, quick	26
kwài	A: quickly, soon	26
kwàidz	N: chopsticks	22

L

-le	P: (verb and sentence suffix, indicating completion of action)	19
líng	NU: zero	16
lóu	N: storied building	18
lóushang	N: upstairs	18
lù	N: road	26
lùjūn	N: army	19
lǚgwǎn	N: hotel; inn	25

M

mǎimai	N: business (buy-sell)	17
mǎn	SV: be slow	26
-máu	M: dime	17
méi-, méi(you)	P: (verb prefix, negating completion of action)	19
méi shémma	IE: don't mention it, it's nothing at all	20
méiyòng	SV: be useless	23
míngnyán	MA/N: next year	21
míngtyán	MA/N: tomorrow	19

N

nà	SP: that (in general)	20
nà búyaujǐn	IE: that's nothing, never mind	20
nè	P: (sentence suffix, indicating suspense negative statements)	20
néng	AV: can, be able to	17
nyánnián	A: year by year	21
nyüer	N: daughter	17

P

pái	N: platoon (army unit)	19
pái jǎng	N: platoon leader	19
pǎu	V: run	27
pào	N: artillery piece	22
pàudàn	N: shell	27

R

rénrén	N: everyone (subject only)	16
ròu	N: meat	22

S

shānpào	N: mountain piece	28
shàng	V: ascend, get on; go to	24
shàngchē	VO: board a train or car	25
Shànghǎi	N: Shanghai	28
shàngjyē	VO: go to the shopping district	25
shàngkè	VO: go to class; attend class	24
shàng líbài	MA/N: last week	21
shànglòu	VO: come or go upstairs	25
shàngsywé	VO: go to school	25
shàngywè	MA/N: last month	21
sháur	N: spoon	22
sháur	M: spoonful of	22
shǐ	N: division (army unit)	22
shǐ jǎng	N: division commander	22
shíhòu	N: time	21
shwěi	N: water	18
shwō gùshr	VO: tell a story	20
swoyi	MA: therefore; so	18
syà	V: descend, go down; get off	24
syàchē	VO: get off a train or car	25
syàkè	VO: class dismissed	24
syà líbài	MA/N: next week	21
syàlòu	VO: come or go downstairs	25
syàywè	MA/N: next month	21
syān	A: first	23
syāndzài	MA: now, at present	17
syāngsya	N: country (rural)	17
syāngsya rén	N: country people	18
syǎng	V: think, think about, desire	18
syǎng	AV: consider, plan to, want to	18
-syē	NU: several; quantity of	17
syīwang	V: hope that, hope for, expect that	21
syīn	N: letter mail	23
syīng	SV; be satisfactory, all right, "can do"	18

T

Táiwān	N:	Taiwan (Formosa)	27
tán	V:	converse; chat about	27
tánhwǎ	VO:	carry on conversation	27
tāng	N:	soup	22
tī	CV:	for (in place of)	23
tīng gùshǐ	VO:	listen to a story	20
tīngshǒu	IE:	hear(d) it said that	22
tsái	N:	vegetables, dish of Chinese food	22
twán	N:	regiment (army unit)	21
twánjǎng	N:	regimental commander	21

W

wán	V:	play	23
wǎn	N/M:	bowl; bowl of	22
wǎnfàn	N:	supper, dinner (late meal)	19
wǎnshàng	MA/N:	evening	19
-wàn	NU:	ten-thousand	16
wǎr	V:	play	23
wèn	V:	ask, inquire of or about	16
wèn...hǎu	IE:	inquire after another's welfare	23

Y

yào jǐn	SV:	be important	21
yào shǐ	MA:	if, in case	19
yí dǐng	A:	certainly, definitely	18
yí gòng	MA:	altogether, in all	16
yí jǐng	A:	already	19
yí hwě	MA/N:	(in or for) a moment	26
yí tyān	MA/N:	a day; a whole day	24
yí sz	N:	idea, meaning	17
yíng dāng	V:	ought to, should	24
Yíng wén	N:	English language	18
yíng	N:	battalion (army unit)	20
yíng jǎng	N:	battalion commander	20
yóude	N:	some, some of, certain (used only in subject)	16
yóu shǐ hou	MA:	sometimes	21
yóu yòng	SV:	be useful	23
yú	N:	fish	22
yòng	CV:	with (using)	22
yòng	V:	use, employ	22
ywànyí	AV:	wish to, be willing to	17